

SCX-5635 Series

# Multi Functional Printer User's Guide

**imagine** the possibilities

Thank you for purchasing a Samsung product.  
To receive a more complete service, please  
register your product at

[www.samsung.com/global/register](http://www.samsung.com/global/register)



# copyright

---

© 2008 Samsung Electronics Co., Ltd. All rights reserved.

This user's guide is provided for information purposes only. All information included herein is subject to change without notice.

Samsung Electronics is not responsible for any direct or indirect damages, arising from or related to use of this user's guide.

- Samsung and Samsung logo are trademarks of Electronics Co., Ltd.
- PCL and PCL 6 are trademarks of Hewlett-Packard Company.
- Microsoft, Windows, and Windows Vista are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.
- PostScript 3 is a trademark of Adobe System, Inc.
- UFST ® and MicroType™ are registered trademarks of Monotype Imaging Inc.
- TrueType, LaserWriter and Macintosh are trademarks of Apple Computer, Inc.
- All other brand or product names are trademarks of their respective companies or organizations.

REV. 1.00

COPYRIGHT  
2

CONTENT	3	9	Safety information
		13	Regulatory information
		24	About this user's guide
		26	Features of your new product

INTRODUCTION	28	28	Machine overview
			Front view
			Rear view
		30	Control panel overview
		31	Understanding the Status LED
		31	Introducing the useful buttons
			Power Saver button
			Menu button

GETTING STARTED	32	32	Setting up the hardware
		32	Supplied software
		33	System requirements
			Windows
			Macintosh
			Linux
		34	Installing USB connected machine's driver
			Windows
			Macintosh
			Linux
		36	Sharing your machine locally
			Windows
			Macintosh

NETWORK SETUP	38	38	Network environment
		38	Introducing useful network programs
			SyncThru™ Web Service
			SyncThru™ Web Admin Service
			SetIP
		38	Using a wired network
			Printing Configuration report
			Setting IP address
			Network parameter setting
			Installing wired network connected machine's driver
		42	Using a wireless network
			Wireless network environments
			Printing Network Configuration Report
			Setting IP address
			Network parameter setting
			Restoring factory default settings
			Configuring the machine's wireless network
			Installing wireless network connected machine's driver
			Macintosh

## BASIC SETUP

49

- 49 **Altitude adjustment**
- 49 **Changing the display language**
- 49 **Setting the date and time**
- 49 **Changing the clock mode**
- 50 **Changing the default mode**
- 50 **Setting sounds**
  - Speaker, ringer, key sound, and alarm sound
  - Speaker volume
- 50 **Entering characters using the number keypad**
  - Entering alphanumeric characters
  - Keypad letters and numbers
  - Correcting numbers or names
  - Inserting a pause
- 51 **Using the save modes**
  - Using toner saving feature
  - Using power saving feature
  - Using scan power saving feature
- 51 **Setting the default tray and paper**
  - In the control panel
  - In the computer
- 52 **Changing the font setting**
- 52 **Setting job timeout**
- 52 **Auto continue**
- 52 **Auto tray switch**

## MEDIA AND TRAY

53

- 53 **Preparing originals**
- 53 **Loading originals**
  - On the scanner glass
  - In the document feeder
- 54 **Selecting print media**
  - Guidelines to select the print media
  - Media sizes supported in each mode
- 55 **Changing the tray size**
- 55 **Loading paper in the tray**
  - Tray 1 / optional tray
  - Multi-purpose tray
- 57 **Printing on special media**
  - Envelope
  - Transparency
  - Labels
  - Card stock/ Custom-sized paper
  - Preprinted paper
- 59 **Setting the paper size and type**
  - Setting the paper size
  - Setting the paper type
  - Setting the paper source
- 59 **selecting an output location**
  - Printing to the output tray

## PRINTING

60

- 60 **Printer driver features**
  - PCL Printer driver
  - PostScript Printer driver
- 60 **Basic printing**
  - Canceling a print job
- 61 **Opening printing preferences**

- Using a favorite setting
- 62 Using help**
- 62 Using special print features**
  - Printing multiple pages on one sheet of paper
  - Printing posters
  - Printing booklets
  - Printing on both sides of paper
  - Change percentage of your document
  - Fitting your document to a selected paper size
  - Using watermarks
  - Using overlay
- 64 Changing the default print settings**
- 65 Setting your machine as a default machine**
- 65 Printing to a file (PRN)**
- 65 Macintosh printing**
  - Printing a document
  - Changing printer settings
  - Printing multiple pages on one sheet of paper
  - Printing on both sides of paper
- 67 Linux printing**
  - Printing from applications
  - Printing files
  - Configuring Printer Properties
- 68 Printing with PS driver**
  - Understanding PS driver's Printing Preferences

## COPYING

### 70

- 70 Basic copy**
- 70 Changing the settings for each copy**
  - Changing the darkness
  - Selecting the type of originals
  - Reducing or enlarging copies
- 71 Changing the default copy settings**
- 71 Using special copy features**
  - ID card copying
  - 2-up or 4-up copying (N-up)
  - Poster copying
  - Clone copying
- 72 Copying on both sides of originals**
- 72 Deciding the form of copy output**
- 72 Setting copy timeout**

## SCANNING

### 73

- 73 Basic scanning method**
- 73 Scanning originals and sending through email (Scan to Email)**
  - Setting up an email account
  - Sending a scanned image to several destinations as an email attachment
  - Storing email addresses
- 75 Scanning originals and sending to your computer (Scan to PC)**
  - For USB connected machine
  - For network connected machine
- 75 Scanning originals and sending via SMB/FTP (Scan to server)**
  - Setting up an FTP server
  - Setting up an SMB server
  - Scanning and sending to SMB/FTP server
- 76 Setting authentication for authorized user**
  - Registering local authorized users

- 76 Using Samsung Scan Manager**
  - Set Scan Button tab
  - Change Port tab
- 77 Changing the scan feature settings**
- 77 Changing the default scan settings**
- 78 Scanning with TWAIN-enabled software**
- 78 Scanning using the WIA driver**
  - Windows XP
  - Windows Vista
- 78 Macintosh scanning**
  - Scanning with USB
  - Scanning with network
- 79 Linux Scanning**
  - Scanning
  - Adding Job Type Settings
  - Using the Image Manager

## FAXING

# 81

- 81 Preparing to fax**
- 81 Sending a fax**
  - Setting the fax header
  - Sending a fax
  - Sending a fax manually
  - Confirming a transmission
  - Automatic redialing
  - Redialing the last number
  - Sending a fax to multiple destinations
  - Delaying a fax transmission
  - Sending a priority fax
- 83 Receiving a fax**
  - Changing the receive modes
  - Receiving manually in Tel mode
  - Receiving automatically in Answering Machine/Fax mode
  - Receiving faxes manually using an extension telephone
  - Receiving faxes using DRPD mode
  - Receiving in secure receiving mode
  - Activating secure receiving mode
  - Printing received faxes on both sides of the paper
  - Receiving faxes in memory
- 85 Adjusting the document settings**
  - Resolution
  - Darkness
- 85 Forwarding a fax to other destination**
  - Forwarding a sent fax to other destination by a fax
  - Forwarding a received fax to other destination by a fax
  - Forwarding a sent fax to other destination by an email
  - Forwarding a received fax to other destination by an email
  - Forwarding a sent fax to other destination by a server
  - Forwarding a received fax to other destination by server
- 86 Setting up address book**
  - Speed dial numbers
  - Group dial numbers
  - Searching Address Book for an entry
- 88 Printing sent fax report automatically**

## USING USB MEMORY DEVICE

89

- 89 About USB memory device**
- 89 Scanning to an USB memory device**
  - Scanning
  - Customizing Scan to USB
- 90 Printing from a USB memory device**
- 90 backing up data**
  - Backing up data
  - Restoring data
- 90 managing usb memory**
  - Deleting an image file
  - Formatting a USB memory device
  - Viewing the USB memory status

## MACHINE STATUS AND ADVANCED FEATURE

92

- 92 Fax setup**
  - Changing the fax setup options
  - Sending
  - Receiving
  - Change Default
  - Auto Report
- 93 Copy setup**
  - Changing the copy setup options
  - Duplex Print
  - Change Default
- 94 Scan setup**
  - Changing the scan setup options
- 94 Printing a report**
- 94 Clearing memory**
- 95 Network**
- 96 Menu overview**

## MANAGEMENT TOOLS

99

- 99 Introducing useful management tools**
- 99 Using SyncThru™ Web Service**
  - To access SyncThru™Web Service:
  - SyncThru™Web Service overview
  - E-mail Notification Setup
  - Setting the contact information
- 100 Using the Smart Panel program**
  - Understanding Smart Panel
  - Changing the Smart Panel Program Settings
- 101 Smarthru Office**
  - Starting SmarThru Office
  - Using SmarThru Office
- 102 Using the Linux Unified Driver Configurator**
  - Opening the Unified Driver Configurator
  - Printers configuration
  - Scanners configuration
  - Ports configuration

## MAINTENANCE

105

- 105 Printing a machine report**
- 105 Finding the serial number**
- 105 Cleaning a machine**
  - Cleaning the outside
  - Cleaning the inside
  - Cleaning the scan unit
- 106 Storing the toner cartridge**

- Expected cartridge life
- 106 Tips for moving & storing your machine**

## **TROUBLESHOOTING**

107

- 107 Redistributing toner**
- 107 Clearing original document jams**
- 108 Tips for avoiding paper curls**
- 108 Tips for avoiding paper jams**
- 109 Clearing paper jams**
  - In tray 1
  - In optional tray 2
  - In the multi-purpose tray
  - Inside the machine
  - In exit area
  - In the duplex unit area
- 112 Understanding display messages**
  - Checking display messages
- 115 Solving other problems**
  - Paper feeding problems
  - Printing problems
  - Printing quality problems
  - Copying problems
  - Scanning problems
  - Fax problems
  - Samsung Scan Manager Problem
  - Common PostScript problems
  - Common Windows problems
  - Common Linux problems
  - Common Macintosh problems

## **SUPPLIES AND ACCESSORIES**

124

- 124 How to purchase**
- 124 Available supplies**
- 124 Available accessories**
- 124 Available maintenance parts**
- 125 Replacing the toner cartridge**
- 125 Necessary precautions to take when installing accessories**
- 125 Upgrading a memory module**
  - Installing a memory module
  - Activating the added accessories in PS printer properties
- 126 Installing a wireless network interface card**
  - Installing a wireless network interface card
- 127 Checking replaceable's lifespan**
- 127 Replacing the document feeder rubber pad**

## **SPECIFICATIONS**

129

- 129 General specifications**
- 130 Printer specifications**
- 131 Scanner specifications**
- 131 Copier specifications**
- 132 Facsimile specifications**
- 133 Print media specifications**

## **CONTACT SAMSUNG WORLDWIDE**

134












# safety information

These warnings and precautions are included in order to prevent injury to you and others, as well as preventing any potential damage to your machine. Be sure to read and understand all of these instructions before using the machine. Use common sense for operating any electrical appliance and whenever using your machine. Also, follow all warnings and instructions marked on the machine and in the accompanying literature. After reading this section, keep it in a safe place for future reference.

## IMPORTANT SAFETY SYMBOLS

This section explains the meanings of all icons and signs in the user's guide. These safety symbols are in order, according to the degree of danger.

### Explanation of all icons and signs used in the user's guide:

	<b>Warning</b>	Hazards or unsafe practices that may result in severe personal injury or death.
	<b>Caution</b>	Hazards or unsafe practices that may result in minor personal injury or property damage.
	Do not attempt.	
	Do not disassemble.	
	Do not touch.	
	Unplug the power cord from the wall socket.	
	Make sure the machine is grounded to prevent electric shock.	
	Call the service center for help.	
	Follow directions explicitly.	

## OPERATING ENVIRONMENT

### Warning



Do not use if the power cord is damaged or if the electrical outlet is not grounded.  
► This could result in electric shock or fire.



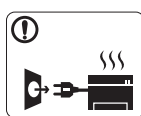
Do not bend, or place heavy objects on the power cord.  
► Stepping on or allowing the power cord to be crushed by a heavy object could result in electric shock or fire.



Do not place anything on top of the machine (water, small metal or heavy objects, candles, lit cigarettes, etc.).  
► This could result in electric shock or fire.



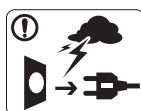
Do not remove the plug by pulling on the cord; do not handle the plug with wet hands.  
► This could result in electric shock or fire.



If the machine gets overheated, it releases smoke, makes strange noises, or generates an odd odor, immediately turn off the power switch and unplug the machine.

► This could result in electric shock or fire.

## Caution



During an electrical storm or for a period of non-operation, remove the power plug from the electrical outlet.

► This could result in electric shock or fire.



Be careful, the paper output area is hot.

► Burns could occur.



If the machine has been dropped, or if the cabinet appears damaged, unplug the machine from all interface connections and request assistance from qualified service personnel.

► Otherwise, this could result in electric shock or fire..



If the machine exhibits a sudden and distinct change in performance, unplug the machine from all interface connections and request assistance from qualified service personnel.

► Otherwise, this could result in electric shock or fire.



If the plug does not easily enter the electrical outlet, do not attempt to force it in.

► Call an electrician to change the electrical outlet, or this could result in electric shock.



Do not allow pets to chew on the AC power, telephone or PC interface cords.

► This could result in electric shock or fire.



If the machine does not operate properly after these instructions have been followed, unplug the machine from all interface connections and request assistance from qualified service personnel.

► Otherwise, this could result in electric shock or fire.

## OPERATING METHOD

### Caution



Do not forcefully pull the paper out during printing.

► It can cause damage to the machine.



Be careful not to put your hand between the machine and paper tray.

► You may get injured.



Do not block or push objects into the ventilation opening.

► This could result in elevated component temperatures which can cause damage or fire.



Use care to avoid paper cuts when replacing paper or removing jammed paper.

► You may get hurt.



When printing large quantities, the bottom part of the paper output area may get hot. Do not allow children to touch.

► You may be burned.



When removing jammed paper, do not use tweezers or sharp metal objects.

► It can cause damage to the machine.



Do not allow too many papers to stack up in the paper output tray.

► It could cause damage to the machine.

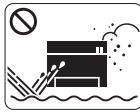


This machine's power interception device is the power cord.

► To switch off the power supply, remove the power cord from the electrical outlet.

## INSTALLATION / MOVING

### Warning



Do not place the machine in an area with dust, humidity or water leaks.

► This could result in electric shock or fire.

### Caution



When moving the machine, turn the power off and disconnect all cords; then lift the machine with at least two people.

► The machine could fall, causing human injury or machine damage.



Do not place the machine on an unstable surface.

► The machine could fall, causing human injury or machine damage.



The machine should be connected to the power level which is specified on the label.

► If you are unsure and want to check the power level you are using, contact the electrical utility company.



Use only No.26 AWG<sup>a</sup> or larger, telephone line cord, if necessary.

► Otherwise, it can cause damage to the machine.



Do not put a cover over the machine or place it in an airtight location, such as a closet.

► If the machine is not well-ventilated, this could result in fire.



Make sure you plug the power cord into a grounded electrical outlet.

► Otherwise, this could result in electric shock or fire.



Do not overload wall outlets and extension cords.

► This can diminish performance, and could result in electric shock or fire.



Use the power cord supplied with your machine for safe operation. If you are using a cord which is longer than 2 meters (79") with a 140V machine, then the gauge should be 16 AWG or larger.

► Otherwise, it can cause damage to the machine, and could result in electric shock or fire.

a. AWG: American Wire Gauge

## MAINTENANCE / CHECKING

### Caution



Unplug this product from the wall outlet before cleaning the inside of the machine. Do not clean the machine with benzene, paint thinner or alcohol; do not spray water directly into the machine.

► This could result in electric shock or fire.



Keep cleaning supplies away from children.

► Children may get hurt.



When you are working inside the machine replacing supplies or cleaning the inside, do not operate the machine.

► You may get injured.



Do not disassemble, repair or rebuild the machine by yourself.

► It can cause damage to the machine. Call a certified technician when the machine needs repair.

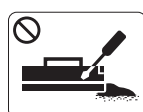
- ⓘ Keep the power cable and the contact surface of the plug clean from dust or water.
  - ▶ This could result in electric shock or fire.
- ⊘ Do not remove any covers or guards that are fastened with screws.
  - ▶ The machine should only be repaired by Samsung service technician.

- ⓘ To clean and operate the machine, strictly follow the user's guide provided with the machine.
  - ▶ Otherwise, it can cause damage to the machine.

## SUPPLY USAGE

---

### Caution



- Do not disassemble the toner cartridge.
- ▶ Toner dust can be dangerous to humans.

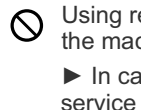


- Do not burn any of the supplies such as toner cartridge or fuser unit.
- ▶ It can cause an explosion or fire.

- ⓘ When changing the toner cartridge or removing jammed paper, be careful not to let toner dust touch your body or clothes.
  - ▶ Toner dust can be dangerous to humans.



- When storing supplies such as toner cartridges, keep them away from children..
- ▶ Toner dust can be dangerous to humans.



- ⊘ Using recycled supplies, such as toner, can cause damage to the machine.
  - ▶ In case of damage due to the use of recycled supplies, a service fee will be charged.

# regulatory information


This machine is designed for our sound environment and certified with several regulatory statements.

## LASER SAFETY STATEMENT

The printer is certified in the U.S. to conform to the requirements of DHHS 21 CFR, chapter 1 Subchapter J for Class I(1) laser products, and elsewhere is certified as a Class I laser product conforming to the requirements of IEC 825.  
Class I laser products are not considered to be hazardous. The laser system and printer are designed so there is never any human access to laser radiation above a Class I level during normal operation, user maintenance or prescribed service condition.

### WARNING

Never operate or service the printer with the protective cover removed from Laser/Scanner assembly. The reflected beam, although invisible, can damage your eyes.  
When using this product, these basic safety precautions should always be followed to reduce risk of fire, electric shock, and injury to persons:



CAUTION - CLASS 3B LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN  
AVOID EXPOSURE TO THE BEAM.

DANGER - LASER RADIATION AVOID DIRECT  
EXPOSURE TO BEAM.

DANGER - RADIATIONS INVISIBLES DU LASER EN CAS  
D'OUVERTURE. EVITER TOUTE EXPOSITION  
DIRECTE AU FAISCEAU.

VORSICHT - UNSICHTBARE LASERSTRAHLUNG, WENN  
ABDECKUNG GEÖFFNET.  
NICHT DEM STRAHL AUSSETZEN.

ATTENZIONE - RADIAZIONE LASER INVISIBILE IN CASO DI  
APERTURA. EVITARE L'ESPOSIZIONE AL FASCIO.

PRECAUCIÓN - RADIACIÓN LASER INVISIBLE CUANDO SE ABRE.  
EVITAR EXPONERSE AL RAYO.

PERIGO - RADIAÇÃO LASER INVISÍVEL AO ABRIR. EVITE  
EXPOSIÇÃO DIRECTA AO FEIXE.

GEVAAR - ONZICHTBARE LASERSTRALEN BIJ GEOPENDE  
KLEP. DEZE KLEP NIET OPENEN.

ADVARSEL - USYNLIG LASERSTRÅLNING VED ÅBNING.  
UNDGÅ UDSAETTELSE FOR STRÅLNING.

ADVARSEL - USYNLIG LASERSTRÅLNING NÅR DEKSEL  
ÅPNES. UNNGÅ EKSPONERING FOR STRÅLEN.

VARNING - OSYNLIG LASERSTRÅLNING NÅR DENNA DEL  
ÄR ÖPPEN. STRÅLEN ÄR FARLIG.

VAROITUS - NÄKYMÄTÖNTÄ LASERSÄTELYÄ AVATTAESSA.  
VARO SUORAA ALTISTUMISTA SÄTEELLE.

**注 意** - 严禁揭开此盖，以免激光泄露灼伤

**주 의** - 이 덮개를 열면 레이저광에 노출될 수 있으므로  
주의하십시오.

## TAIWAN ONLY

**警告使用者：**  
此為甲類資訊技術設備，於居住環境中使用時，可能會造成射頻擾動，  
在此種情況下，使用者會被要求採取某些適當的對策。

## OZONE SAFETY



During normal operation, this machine produces ozone. The ozone produced does not present a hazard to the operator. However, it is advisable that the machine be operated in a well ventilated area.  
If you need additional information about ozone, request your nearest Samsung dealer.

## MERCURY SAFETY

---



Contains Mercury, Dispose According to Local, State or Federal Laws.(U.S.A. only)

## PERCHLORATE WARNING

---

This Perchlorate warning applies only to primary CR (Manganese Dioxide) Lithium coin cells in the product sold or distributed ONLY in California USA.

Perchlorate Material - special handling may apply.

See [www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate](http://www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate). (U.S.A. only)

## POWER SAVER

---



This printer contains advanced energy conservation technology that reduces power consumption when it is not in active use.

When the printer does not receive data for an extended period of time, power consumption is automatically lowered.

ENERGY STAR and the ENERGY STAR mark are registered U.S. marks.

For more information on the ENERGY STAR program see <http://www.energystar.gov>

## RECYCLING

---



Recycle or dispose of the packaging material for this product in an environmentally responsible manner.

## CHINA ONLY

---

### 回收和再循环

为了保护环境，我公司已经为废弃的产品建立了回收和再循环系统。

我们会为您无偿提供回收同类废旧产品的服务。

当您要废弃您正在使用的产品时，请您及时与工厂取得联系，

我们会及时为您提供服务。

## CORRECT DISPOSAL OF THIS PRODUCT (WASTE ELECTRICAL & ELECTRONIC EQUIPMENT)

---

**(Applicable in the European Union and other European countries with separate collection systems)**



This marking shown on the product or its literature, indicates that it should not be disposed with other household wastes at the end of its working life. To prevent possible harm to the environment or human health from uncontrolled waste disposal, separate this from other types of wastes and recycle it responsibly to promote the sustainable reuse of material resources.

Household users should contact either the retailer where they purchased this product, or their local government office, for details of where and how they can take this item for environmentally safe recycling.

Business users should contact their supplier and check the terms and conditions of the purchase contract. This product should not be mixed with other commercial wastes for disposal.

## CORRECT DISPOSAL OF BATTERIES IN THIS PRODUCT

---

**(Applicable in the European Union and other European countries with separate battery return systems.)**



This marking on the battery, manual or packaging indicates that the batteries in this product should not be disposed of with other household waste at the end of their working life. Where marked, the chemical symbols Hg, Cd or Pb indicate that the battery contains mercury, cadmium or lead above the reference levels in EC Directive 2006/66. If batteries are not properly disposed of, these substances can cause harm to human health or the environment.

To protect natural resources and to promote material reuse, please separate batteries from other types of waste and recycle them through your local, free battery return system.

## RADIO FREQUENCY EMISSIONS

---

### FCC Information to the User

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or experienced radio TV technician for help.



Change or modifications not expressly approved by the manufacturer responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

### Canadian Radio Interference Regulations

This digital apparatus does not exceed the Class A limits for radio noise emissions from digital apparatus as set out in the interference-causing equipment standard entitled "Digital Apparatus", ICES-003 of the Industry and Science Canada.

Cet appareil numérique respecte les limites de bruits radioélectriques applicables aux appareils numériques de Classe A prescrites dans la norme sur le matériel brouilleur: "Appareils Numériques", ICES-003 édictée par l'Industrie et Sciences Canada.

# UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

---

## Federal Communications Commission (FCC)

### Intentional emitter per FCC Part 15


Low power, Radio LAN type devices (radio frequency (RF) wireless communication devices), operating in the 2.4 GHz/5 GHz Band, may be present (embedded) in your printer system. This section is only applicable if these devices are present. Refer to the system label to verify the presence of wireless devices.

Wireless devices that may be in your system are only qualified for use in the United States of America if an FCC ID number is on the system label.


The FCC has set a general guideline of 20 cm (8 inches) separation between the device and the body, for use of a wireless device near the body (this does not include extremities). This device should be used more than 20 cm (8 inches) from the body when wireless devices are on. The power output of the wireless device (or devices), which may be embedded in your printer, is well below the RF exposure limits as set by the FCC.

This transmitter must not be collocated or operation in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

Operation of this device is subject to the following two conditions:(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and(2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

 Wireless devices are not user serviceable. Do not modify them in any way. Modification to a wireless device will void the authorization to use it. Contact manufacturer for service.

### FCC Statement for Wireless LAN use:

 While installing and operating this transmitter and antenna combination the radio frequency exposure limit of 1mW/cm2 may be exceeded at distances close to the antenna installed. Therefore, the user must maintain a minimum distance of 20cm from the antenna at all times. This device cannot be collocated with another transmitter and transmitting antenna.

# RFID (RADIO FREQUENCY INTERFACE DEVICE)

---

RFID operation is subject to the following two conditions:(1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device. (U.S.A., France, Taiwan only)

# TAIWAN ONLY

---

## 低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法

- 第十二條

經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。
- 第十四條

低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。



## RUSSIA ONLY

---

AE95



Минсвязи России



## FAX BRANDING

---

The Telephone Consumer Protection Act of 1991 makes it unlawful for any person to use a computer or other electronic device to send any message via a telephone facsimile machine unless such message clearly contains in a margin at the top or bottom of each transmitted page or on the first page of the transmission the following information:

1. the date and time of transmission
2. identification of either business, business entity or individual sending the message; and
3. telephone number of either the sending machine, business, business entity or individual.

The Telephone Company may make changes in its communications facilities, equipment operations or procedures where such action is reasonably required in the operation of its business and is not inconsistent with the rules and regulations in FCC Part 68. If such changes can be reasonably expected to render any customer terminal equipment incompatible with telephone company communications facilities, or require modification or alteration of such terminal equipment, or otherwise materially affect its use or performance, the customer shall be given adequate notice in writing, to allow the customer an opportunity to maintain uninterrupted service

## RINGER EQUIVALENCE NUMBER

---

The Ringer Equivalence Number and FCC Registration Number for this machine may be found on the label located on the bottom or rear of the machine. In some instances you may need to provide these numbers to the telephone company.

The Ringer Equivalence Number (REN) is a measure of the electrical load placed on the telephone line, and is useful for determining whether you have “overloaded” the line. Installing several types of equipment on the same telephone line may result in problems making and receiving telephone calls, especially ringing when your line is called. The sum of all Ringer Equivalence Numbers of the equipment on your telephone line should be less than five in order to assure proper service from the telephone company. In some cases, a sum of five may not be usable on your line. If any of your telephone equipment is not operating properly, you should immediately remove it from your telephone line, as it may cause harm to the telephone network.



FCC Regulations state that changes or modifications to this equipment not expressly approved by the manufacturer could void the user's authority to operate this equipment. In the event that terminal equipment causes harm to the telephone network, the telephone company should notify the customer that service may be stopped. However, where prior notice is impractical, the company may temporarily cease service, providing that they:

- a) promptly notify the customer.
- b) give the customer an opportunity to correct the equipment problem.
- c) inform the customer of the right to bring a complaint to the Federal Communication Commission pursuant to procedures set out in FCC Rules and Regulations Subpart E of Part 68.

### **You should also know that:**

- Your machine is not designed to be connected to a digital PBX system.
- If you intend to use a computer modem or fax modem on the same phone line as your machine, you may experience transmission and

reception problems with all the equipment. It is recommended that no other equipment, except for a regular telephone, share the line with your machine.

- If your area experiences a high incidence of lightning or power surges, we recommend that you install surge protectors for both the power and the telephone lines. Surge protectors can be purchased from your dealer or telephone and electronic specialty stores.
- When programming emergency numbers and/or making test calls to emergency numbers, use a non-emergency number to advise the emergency service dispatcher of your intentions. The dispatcher will give you further instructions on how to actually test the emergency number.
- This machine may not be used on coin service or party lines.
- This machine provides magnetic coupling to hearing aids.

You may safely connect this equipment to the telephone network by means of a standard modular jack, USOC RJ-11C.

## REPLACING THE FITTED PLUG (FOR UK ONLY)

---

### Important

The mains lead for this machine is fitted with a standard (BS 1363) 13 amp plug and has a 13 amp fuse. When you change or examine the fuse, you must re-fit the correct 13 amp fuse. You then need to replace the fuse cover. If you have lost the fuse cover, do not use the plug until you have another fuse cover.

Contact the people from you purchased the machine.

The 13 amp plug is the most widely used type in the UK and should be suitable. However, some buildings (mainly old ones) do not have normal 13 amp plug sockets. You need to buy a suitable plug adaptor. Do not remove the moulded plug.



If you cut off the moulded plug, get rid of it straight away.

You cannot rewire the plug and you may receive an electric shock if you plug it into a socket.

### Important warning:



You must earth this machine.

The wires in the mains lead have the following color code:

- **Green and Yellow:** Earth
- **Blue:** Neutral
- **Brown:** Live

If the wires in the mains lead do not match the colors marked in your plug, do the following:

You must connect the green and yellow wire to the pin marked by the letter "E" or by the safety 'Earth symbol' or colored green and yellow or green.

You must connect the blue wire to the pin which is marked with the letter "N" or colored black.

You must connect the brown wire to the pin which is marked with the letter "L" or colored red.

You must have a 13 amp fuse in the plug, adaptor, or at the distribution board.

## DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY (EUROPEAN COUNTRIES)

---

### Approvals and Certifications



The CE marking applied to this product symbolizes Samsung Electronics Co., Ltd. Declaration of Conformity with the following applicable 93/68/EEC Directives of the European Union as of the dates indicated:

**January 1, 1995:** Council Directive 2006/95/EC Approximation of the laws of the member states related to low voltage equipment.

**January 1, 1996:** Council Directive 2004/108/EC (92/31/EEC), approximation of the laws of the Member States related to electromagnetic compatibility.

**March 9, 1999:** Council Directive 1999/5/EC on radio equipment and telecommunications terminal equipment and the mutual recognition of their conformity. A full declaration, defining the relevant Directives and referenced standards can be obtained from your Samsung Electronics Co., Ltd. representative.

**EC Certification**

Certification to 1999/5/EC Radio Equipment & Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive (FAX)

This Samsung product has been self-certified by Samsung for pan-European single terminal connection to the analogue public switched telephone network (PSTN) in accordance with Directive 1999/5/EC. The product has been designed to work with the national PSTNs and compatible PBXs of the European countries:

In the event of problems, you should contact the Euro QA Lab of Samsung Electronics Co., Ltd. in the first instance.

The product has been tested against TBR21. To assist in the use and application of terminal equipment which complies with this standard, the European Telecommunication Standards Institute (ETSI) has issued an advisory document (EG 201 121) which contains notes and additional requirements to ensure network compatibility of TBR21 terminals. The product has been designed against, and is fully compliant with, all of the relevant advisory notes contained in this document.

**European Radio Approval Information(for products fitted with EU-approved radio devices)**

Low power, Radio LAN type devices (radio frequency (RF) wireless communication devices), operating in the 2.4 GHz/5 GHz band, may be present (embedded) in your printer system which is intended for home or office use. This section is only applicable if these devices are present. Refer to the system label to verify the presence of wireless devices.

Wireless devices that may be in your system are only qualified for use in the European Union or associated areas if a CE mark with a Notified Body Registration Number and the Alert Symbol is on the system label.

The power output of the wireless device or devices that may be embedded in you printer is well below the RF exposure limits as set by the European Commission through the R&TTE directive.

**European States qualified under wireless approvals:**

- EU

Austria, Belgium, Cyprus, Czech Republic, Denmark, Estonia, Finland, France (with frequency restrictions), Germany, Greece, Hungary, Ireland, Italy, Latvia, Lithuania, Luxembourg, Malta, The Netherlands, Poland, Portugal, Slovakia, Slovenia, Spain, Sweden and the U.K.
- EEA/EFTA countries

Iceland, Liechtenstein, Norway and Switzerland

**European States with restrictions on use:**

- EU

In France, the frequency range is restricted to 2446.5-2483.5 MHz for devices above 10 mW transmitting power such as wireless

In Italiy, if used outside of own premises, general authorization is required

In Russian, only for indoor applications
- EEA/EFTA countries

No limitations at this time.

**REGULATORY COMPLIANCE STATEMENTS**

**Wireless Guidance**


Low power, Radio LAN type devices (radio frequency (RF) wireless communication devices), operating in the 2.4 GHz/5 GHz Band, may be present (embedded) in your printer system. The following section is a general overview of considerations while operating a wireless device. Additional limitations, cautions, and concerns for specific countries are listed in the specific country sections (or country group sections). The wireless devices in your system are only qualified for use in the countries identified by the Radio Approval Marks on the system rating label. If the country you will be using the wireless device in, is not listed, contact your local Radio Approval agency for requirements. Wireless devices are closely regulated and use may not be allowed.

The power output of the wireless device or devices that may be embedded in your printer is well below the RF exposure limits as known at this time. Because the wireless devices (which may be embedded into your printer) emit less energy than is allowed in radio frequency safety standards and recommendations, manufacturer believes these devices are safe for use. Regardless of the power levels, care should be taken to minimize human contact during normal operation.






As a general guideline, a separation of 20 cm (8 inches) between the wireless device and the body, for use of a wireless device near the body (this does not include extremities) is typical. This device should be used more than 20 cm (8 inches) from the body when wireless devices are on and transmitting.

This transmitter must not be collocated or operation in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

Some circumstances require restrictions on wireless devices. Examples of common restrictions are listed below:



Radio frequency wireless communication can interfere with equipment on commercial aircraft. Current aviation regulations require wireless devices to be turned off while traveling in an airplane. IEEE 802.11 (also known as wireless Ethernet) and Bluetooth communication devices are examples of devices that provide wireless communication.

-  In environments where the risk of interference to other devices or services is harmful or perceived as harmful, the option to use a wireless device may be restricted or eliminated. Airports, Hospitals, and Oxygen or flammable gas laden atmospheres are limited examples where use of wireless devices may be restricted or eliminated. When in environments where you are uncertain of the sanction to use wireless devices, ask the applicable authority for authorization prior to use or turning on the wireless device.
-  Every country has different restrictions on the use of wireless devices. Since your system is equipped with a wireless device, when traveling between countries with your system, check with the local Radio Approval authorities prior to any move or trip for any restrictions on the use of a wireless device in the destination country.
-  If your system came equipped with an internal embedded wireless device, do not operate the wireless device unless all covers and shields are in place and the system is fully assembled.
-  Wireless devices are not user serviceable. Do not modify them in any way. Modification to a wireless device will void the authorization to use it. Contact manufacturer for service.
-  Only use drivers approved for the country in which the device will be used. See the manufacturer System Restoration Kit, or contact manufacturer Technical Support for additional information.

## OPENSSL LICENSE

---

Copyright (c) 1998-2001 The OpenSSL Project. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgment: "This product includes software developed by the OpenSSL Project for use in the OpenSSL Toolkit. (<http://www.openssl.org/>)"
4. The names "OpenSSL Toolkit" and "OpenSSL Project" must not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without prior written permission. For written permission, please contact [openssl-core@openssl.org](mailto:openssl-core@openssl.org).
5. Products derived from this software may not be called "OpenSSL" nor may "OpenSSL" appear in their names without prior written permission of the OpenSSL Project.
6. Redistributions of any form whatsoever must retain the following acknowledgment: "This product includes software developed by the OpenSSL Project for use in the OpenSSL Toolkit (<http://www.openssl.org/>)"

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE OpenSSL PROJECT ``AS IS'' AND ANY EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE OpenSSL PROJECT OR ITS CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

This product includes cryptographic software written by Eric Young([ey@cryptsoft.com](mailto:ey@cryptsoft.com)). This product includes software written by Tim Hudson ([tjh@cryptsoft.com](mailto:tjh@cryptsoft.com)).

## ORIGINAL SSLEAY LICENSE

---

Copyright (C) 1995-1998 Eric Young ([ey@cryptsoft.com](mailto:ey@cryptsoft.com)) All rights reserved.

This package is an SSL implementation written by Eric Young ([ey@cryptsoft.com](mailto:ey@cryptsoft.com)). The implementation was written so as to conform with Netscapes SSL.

This library is free for commercial and non-commercial use as long as the following conditions are aheared to. The following conditions apply to all code found in this distribution, be it the RC4, RSA, lhash, DES, etc., code; not just the SSL code. The SSL documentation included with this distribution is covered by the same copyright terms except that the holder is Tim Hudson ([tjh@cryptsoft.com](mailto:tjh@cryptsoft.com)). Copyright remains Eric Young's, and as such any Copyright notices in the code are not to be removed. If this package is used in a product, Eric Young should be given attribution as the author of the parts of the library used. This can be in the form of a textual message at program startup or in documentation (online or textual) provided with the package.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgement: "This product includes cryptographic software written by Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com)" The word 'cryptographic' can be left out if the routines from the library being used are not cryptographic related:-).
4. If you include any Windows specific code (or a derivative thereof) from the apps directory (application code) you must include an acknowledgement: "This product includes software written by Tim Hudson (tjh@cryptsoft.com)"

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY ERIC YOUNG ``AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

The licence and distribution terms for any publically available version or derivative of this code cannot be changed. i.e. this code cannot simply be copied and put under another distribution licence [including the GNU Public Licence].



Declaration of Conformity

Manufactured at:  
of Samsung Electronics Co., Ltd.  
259, Gongdan-Dong, Gumi-City, Gyeongsangbuk-Do, Korea 730-030  
  
of Samsung Electronics(Shandong) Digital Printing Co., Ltd.  
264209, Samsung Road, Weihai Hi-Tech. IDZ, Shandong Province, P.R.China  
  
of Weihai Shin Heung Digital Electronics Co., Ltd.  
98, Samsung Road, Weihai Hi-Tech. IDZ, Shandong Province, P.R.China

We hereby declare, that the product above is in compliance with the essential requirements of the R&TTE Directive (1995/5/EC) by application of:  
EN 60950-1: 2001 + A11 (IEC 60950-1:2001)  
EN 55022:1998 +A1:2000 +A2:2003  
EN 61000-3-2:2000 +A2:2005  
EN 61000-3-3:1995 +A1:2001 +A2:2005  
EN 61000-4-2:1995  
EN 61000-4-3:1996  
EN 61000-4-4:2004  
EN 61000-4-5:1995  
EN 61000-4-6:1996  
EN 61000-4-11:1994  
EN 61000-4-8:1993  
ETSI TS 103 021  
ETSI EG 201 121 (February 2000)  
ES 201 187

The Technical documentation is kept at the below Manufacturer's address.

Manufacturer

Samsung Electronics Co., Ltd.  
259, Gongdan-Dong, Gumi-City  
Gyeongsangbuk-Do, Korea 730-030

July 4, 2008

*Baek Sung Hwan*

Sung Hwan Baek / S. Manage

Representative in the EU:

Samsung Electronics Euro QA Lab.  
Blackbushe Business Park  
Saxony Way, Yateley, Hampshire  
GU46 6GG, UK

July 4, 2008  
(Place and date of issue)

*Y. S. Park*

Yong Sang Park / S. Manager  
(Name and signature of authorized person)

产品中有毒有害物质或元素的名称及含量


部件名称	有毒有害物质或元素					
	铅 (Pb)	汞 (Hg)	镉 (Cd)	六价铬 (Cr <sup>6+</sup> )	多溴联苯 (PBB)	多溴联苯醚 (PBDE)
塑料	○	○	○	○	○	○
金属 ( 机箱 )	X	○	○	○	○	○
印刷电路部件 (PCA)	X	○	○	○	○	○
电缆 / 连接器	X	○	○	○	○	○
电源设备	X	○	○	○	○	○
电源线	X	○	○	○	○	○
机械部件	X	○	○	○	○	○
卡盒部件	X	○	○	○	○	○
定影部件	X	○	○	○	○	○
扫描仪部件 - CCD ( 如果有 )	X	X	○	○	○	○
扫描仪部件 - 其它 ( 如果有 )	X	○	○	○	○	○
印刷电路板部件 (PBA)	X	○	○	○	○	○
墨粉	○	○	○	○	○	○
滚筒	○	○	○	○	○	○

○：表示该有毒有害物质在该部件所有均质材料中的含量均在 SJ/T 11363-2006 标准规定的限量要求以下。  
×：表示该有毒有害物质至少在该部件的某一均质材料中的含量超出 SJ/T 11363-2006 标准规定的限量要求。

以上表为目前本产品含有有毒有害物质的信息。本信息由本公司的配套厂家提供，经本公司审核后而做成，本产品的部分部件含有有毒有害物质，这些部件是在现有科学技术水平下暂时无可替代物质，但三星电子将会一直为满足 SJ/T 11363-2006 标准而做不懈的努力。

# about this user's guide

This user's guide provides information about basic understanding of the machine as well as detailed explanation on each step during actual usage. Valuable for both novice and professional users can refer to this as a guide for installing and using the machine.



-  Read the safety information before using the machine.
- If you have a problem using the machine, refer to the troubleshooting chapter. (See "Troubleshooting" on page 107.)
- Terms used in this user's guide are explained in the glossary chapter. (See "Glossary" on page 136.)
- Use Index to find information.
- All illustrations in this user's guide may differ from your machine depending on its options or models.
- The procedures in this user's guide are mainly based on Windows XP.

## CONVENTION

Some terms in this guide are used interchangeably, as below:

- Document is synonymous with original.
- Paper is synonymous with media, or print media.
- Machine refers to printer or MFP.


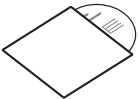

The following table offers the conventions of this guide:

CONVENTION	DESCRIPTION	EXAMPLE
<b>Bold</b>	For texts on the display or button names on the machine.	<b>Start</b>
<b>Note</b>	Provides additional information or detailed specification of the machine function and feature.	 The date format may differ from country to country.
<b>Caution</b>	Gives users information to protect the machine from possible mechanical damage or malfunction.	 Do not touch the green underside of the toner cartridge.
<b>Footnote</b>	Provides additional more detailed information on certain words or a phrase.	a. pages per minute
<b>("Cross-reference")</b>	Guides users to a reference page for the additional detailed information.	(See Finding more information.)



# FINDING MORE INFORMATION

You can find information for setting up and using your machine from the following resources, either as a print-out or on screen.

MATERIAL NAME	DESCRIPTION
<div>Quick Install Guide</div> <div></div>	This guide provides information on setting up your machine and this requires that you follow the instructions in the guide to prepare the machine.
<div>Online User's Guide</div> <div></div>	This guide provides you with step-by-step instructions for using your machine's full features, and contains information for maintaining your machine, troubleshooting, and installing accessories.
<div>Network Website</div>	You can set the network environment from your computer using network-managing programs, such as SetIP, SyncThru™ Web Admin Service, etc.This Website will be convenient for network administrators who need to manage many machines simultaneously. You can download the SyncThru™ Web Admin Service on <a href="http://solution.samsungprinter.com">http://solution.samsungprinter.com</a> . SetIP program is provided in the software CD.
<div>Driver Help</div> <div></div>	This help provides you with help information on printer driver and instructions for setting up the options for printing. (See "Using help" on page 62.)
<div>Samsung website</div>	If you have Internet access, you can get help, support, machine drivers, manuals, and order information from the Samsung website, <a href="http://www.samsungprinter.com">www.samsungprinter.com</a> .

# features of your new product

Your new machine is equipped with a number of special features that improve the quality of the documents you print.

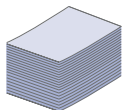
## SPECIAL FEATURES

### Print with excellent quality and speed



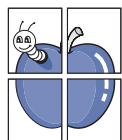
- You can print with a resolution of up to 1200 dpi effective output.
- Your machine prints A4-sized paper at up to 33 ppm and letter-sized paper at up to 35 ppm.
- For duplex printing, your machine prints A4-sized paper at up to 17 ipm and letter-sized paper at up to 18 ipm.

### Handle many different types of printable material



- The multi-purpose tray supports envelopes, labels, custom-sized media, postcards, and heavy paper. The multi-purpose tray holds up to 50 sheets of plain paper.
- The 250-sheet tray 1 and 250-sheet optional tray support plain paper in various sizes.

### Create professional documents



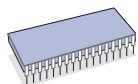
- Print Watermarks. You can customize your documents with words, such as "Confidential". (See "Using watermarks" on page 63.)
- Print Posters. The text and pictures of each page of your document are magnified and printed across the sheet of paper and can then be taped together to form a poster. (See "Printing posters" on page 62.)
- You can use preprinted forms with plain paper. (See "Using overlay" on page 64.)

### Save time and money



- To save paper, you can print multiple pages on one single sheet of paper. (See "Printing multiple pages on one sheet of paper" on page 62.)
- This machine automatically conserves electricity by substantially reducing power consumption when not in use.
- To save paper, you can print on both sides of the paper (double-sided printing). (See "Printing on both sides of paper" on page 62.)

### Expand your machine's capacity



- Your machine has an extra memory slot to expand their memory. (See "Available accessories" on page 124.)
- Zoran IPS Emulation\* compatible with PostScript 3 (PS) enables PS printing.

### **ZORAN**\* Zoran IPS Emulation compatible with PostScript 3

©Copyright 1995-2005, Zoran Corporation. All rights reserved. Zoran, the Zoran logo, IPS/PS3, and OnelImage are trademarks of Zoran Corporation.

#### 136 PS3 fonts

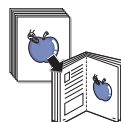
Contains UFST and MicroType from Monotype Imaging Inc.

### Print in various environments



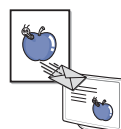
- You can print with various operating system such as Windows, Linux and Macintosh systems. (See "System requirements" on page 33.)
- Your machine is equipped with a USB interface and a network interface.

### Copy originals in several formats



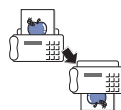
- Your machine can copy multiple image copies from the original document on a single page. (See "2-up or 4-up copying (N-up)" on page 71.)
- The print quality and image size may be adjusted and enhance at the same time.

### Scan the originals and send it right away



- Scan in color and use the precise compressions of JPEG, TIFF and PDF formats.
- Quickly scan and send files to multiple destinations using Networks scanning. (See "Sending a scanned image to several destinations as an email attachment" on page 74.)

### Set a specific time to transmit a Fax



- You can specify a certain time to transmit the fax and also send the fax to several stored destinations.
- After the transmission, the machine may print out the fax reports according to the setting.

### Use USB flash memory devices



If you have a USB memory device, you can use it in various ways with your machine.

- You can scan documents and save them to the device.
- You can directly print data stored to the device.

## FEATURES BY MODELS

The machine is designed to support all of your document needs from printing and copying to more advanced networking solutions for your business.  
**Some features and optional goods may not be available depending on models or countries.**  
Features by models include:

FEATURES	SCX-5635FN	SCX-5635HN
USB 2.0	●	●
USB Memory Interface	●	●
Document Feeder	●	●
Network Interface Ethernet 10/100 Base TX wired LAN	●	●
Network Interface 802.11 b/g wireless LAN	○	
Duplex (2-sided) printing	●	●
FAX	●	●
Handset		●

( ●: Included, ○: Optional, Blank: Not available)

# introduction

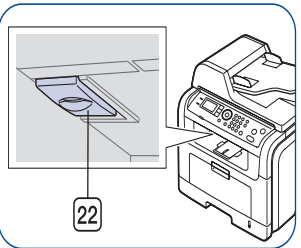
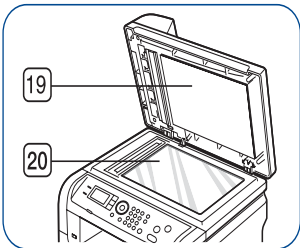
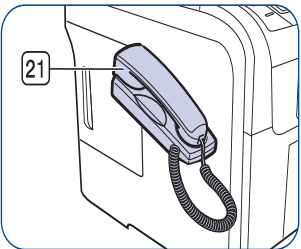
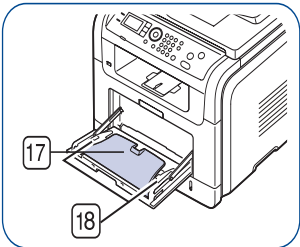
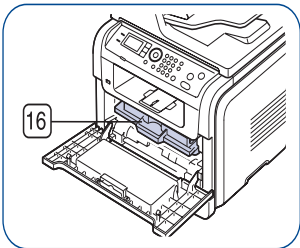
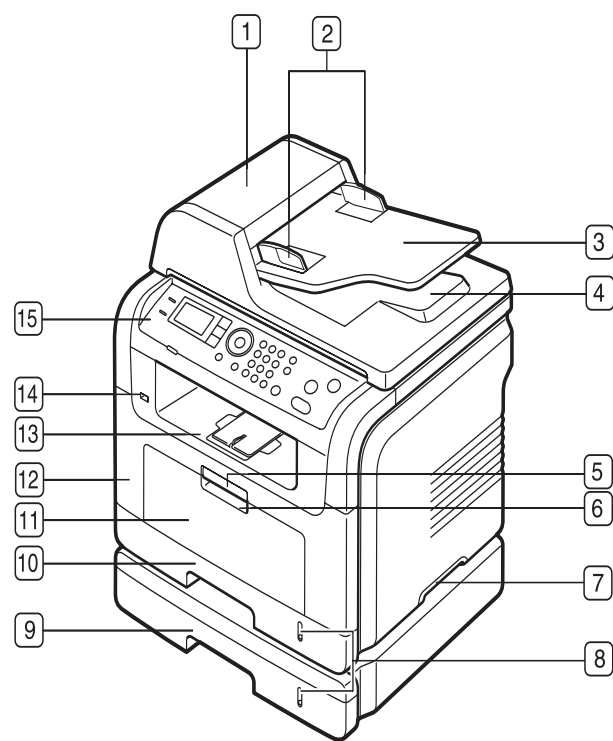
These are the main components of your machine:

**This chapter includes:**

- Machine overview
- Control panel overview
- Understanding the Status LED
- Introducing the useful buttons

## MACHINE OVERVIEW

### Front view

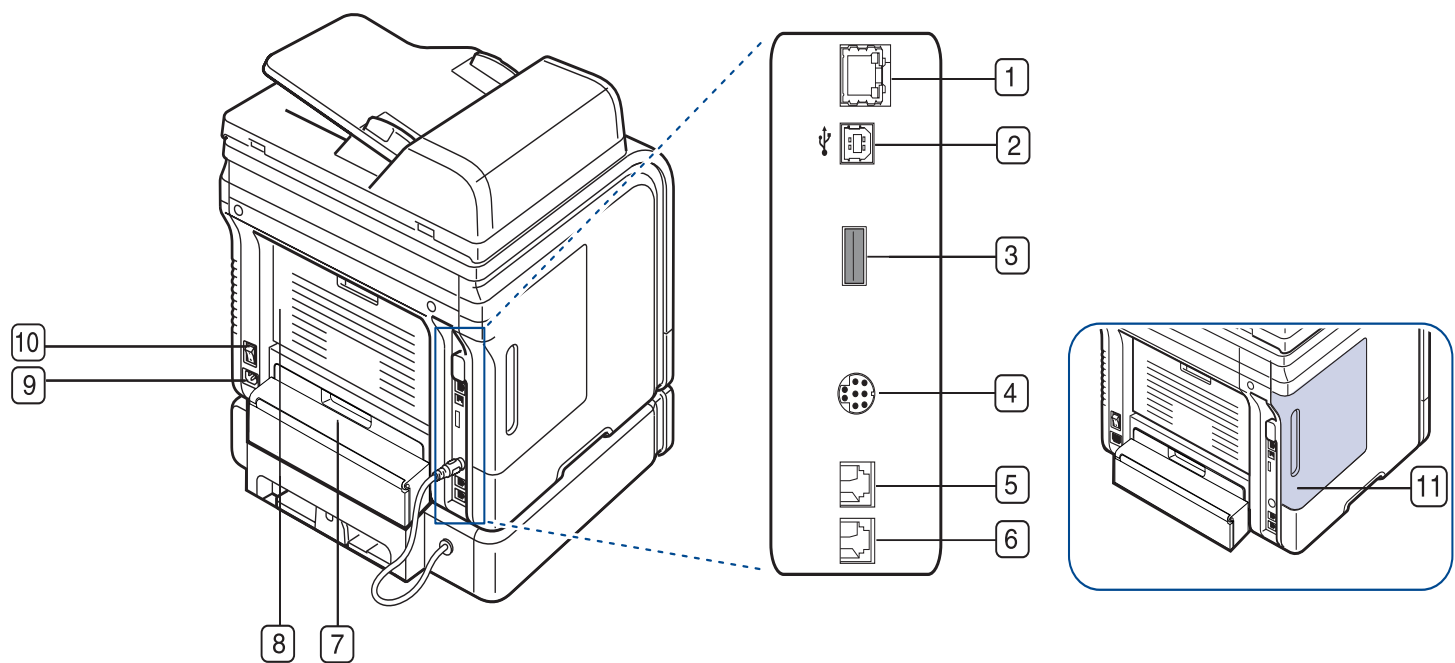


1 Document feeder cover	12 Front door
2 Document feeder width guides	13 Document output tray
3 Document feeder input tray	14 USB memory port
4 Document feeder output tray	15 Control panel
5 Front door handle	16 Toner cartridge
6 Multi-purpose tray handle	17 Multi-purpose tray extension
7 Handle	18 Multi-purpose tray paper width guides
8 Paper level indicator	19 Scanner lid

9 Optional tray 2 <sup>a</sup>	20 Scanner glass
10 Tray 1	21 Handset <sup>b</sup>
11 Multi-purpose tray	22 Scanner lock switch

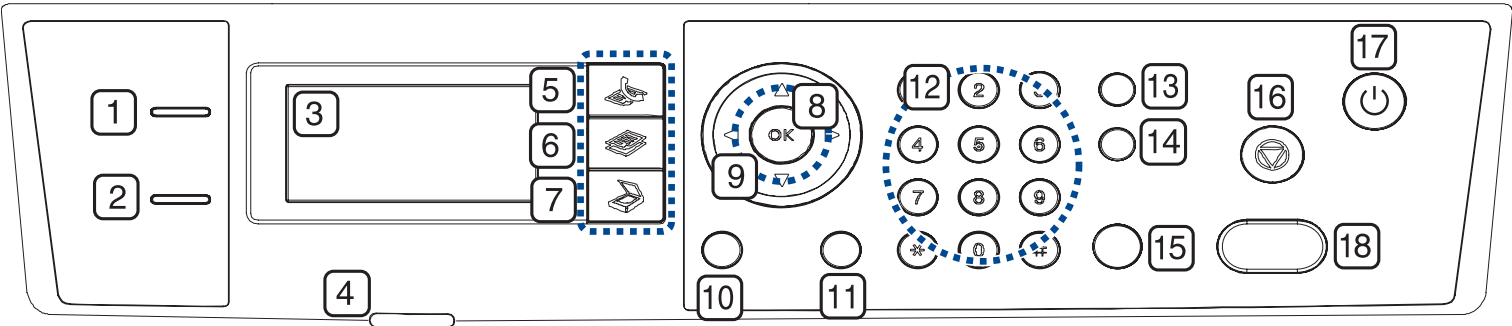
a. Optional device.  
b. SCX-5635HN only.

Rear view



1	Network port	7	Duplex unit
2	USB port	8	Rear door
3	USB host port	9	Power receptacle
4	Optional tray 2 cable connector	10	Power-switch
5	Telephone line socket	11	Control board cover
6	Extension telephone socket (EXT)		

# CONTROL PANEL OVERVIEW




1	ID Copy	You can copy both sides of the ID Card like a driver's license to a single side of paper. (See "ID card copying" on page 71.)
2	Direct USB	Allows you to directly print files stores on a USB memory device when it is inserted into the USB memory port on your machine. (See "About USB memory device" on page 89.)
3	Display screen	Shows the current status and prompts during an operation.
4	Status	Shows the status of your machine. (See "Understanding the Status LED" on page 31.)
5	Fax	Activates Fax mode.
6	Copy	Activates Copy mode.
7	Scan/Email	Activates Scan mode.
8	OK	Confirms the selection on the screen.
9	Arrow	Scroll through the options available in the selected menu, and increase or decrease values.
10	Menu	Enters Menu mode and scrolls through the available menus. (See "Machine status and advanced feature" on page 92.)
11	Back	Sends you back to the upper menu level.
12	Numeric keypad	Dials fax number, and enters the number value for document copies or other options.
13	Address Book	Allows you to store frequently used fax numbers and email addresses or search for stored fax numbers or email addresses.
14	Redial/Pause	In standby mode, redials the last number. Also in edit mode, inserts a pause into a fax number.
15	On Hook Dial	Performs same as you hold a handset under the telephone line is engaged.
16	Stop/Clear	Stops an operation at any time. The pop-up window appears on the screen showing the current job that the user can stop or resume.
17	Power Saver	Sends the machine into power saver mode. You can also turn the power on and off with this button. (See "Power Saver button" on page 31.)
18	Start	Starts a job.

## UNDERSTANDING THE STATUS LED

The color of the status LED indicates the machine's current status.

STATUS		DESCRIPTION
Off		<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>The machine is off-line.</li><li>The machine is in power saver mode. When data is received, or any button is pressed, it switches to on-line automatically.</li></ul>
Green	Blinking	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>When the backlight slowly blinks, the machine is receiving data from the computer.</li><li>When the backlight blinks rapidly, the machine is printing data.</li></ul>
	On	The machine is on-line and can be used.
Red	Blinking	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>A minor error has occurred and the machine is waiting for the error to be cleared. Check the display message. When the problem is cleared, the machine resumes.</li><li>The toner cartridge is near the end of its life. Order a new toner cartridge. You can temporarily improve print quality by redistributing the toner. (See "Replacing the toner cartridge" on page 125, "Redistributing toner" on page 107.)</li></ul>
	On	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>The toner cartridge is empty. Remove the old toner cartridge and install a new one. (See "Replacing the toner cartridge" on page 125.)</li><li>A paper jam has occurred. (See "Clearing paper jams" on page 109.)</li><li>The cover is opened. Close the cover.</li><li>There is no paper in the tray. Load paper in the tray.</li><li>The machine has stopped due to a major error. Check the display message. (See "Understanding display messages" on page 112.)</li></ul>

 Check the message on the display screen. Follow the instructions in the message or refer to troubleshooting part. (See "Understanding display messages" on page 112.) If the problem persists, call for service.

## INTRODUCING THE USEFUL BUTTONS

### Power Saver button

When the machine is not in use, save electricity by pressing the **Power Saver** button. (See "Using power saving feature" on page 51.)

STATUS	DESCRIPTION
Off	The machine is not in the power save mode.
On	The machine is in the power save mode.

### Menu button

When you want to know the machine status and set your machine to use an advanced feature, click **Menu** button. (See "Machine status and advanced feature" on page 92.)

# getting started

This chapter gives you step-by-step instructions for setting up the USB connected machine and software.

## This chapter includes:

- Setting up the hardware
- Supplied software
- System requirements
- Installing USB connected machine's driver
- Sharing your machine locally

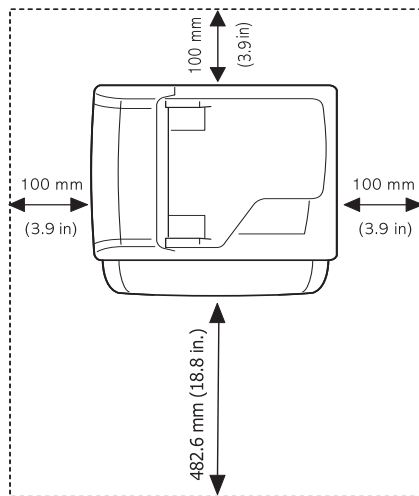
## SETTING UP THE HARDWARE

This section shows the steps to set up the hardware, as is explained in the Quick Install Guide. Make sure you read the Quick Install Guide first and follow the steps below:

### 1. Select a stable location.

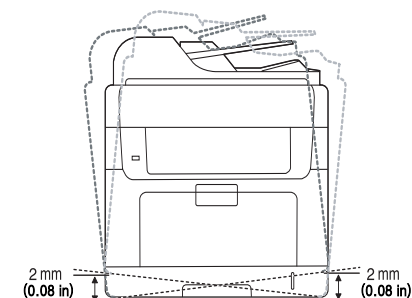
Select a level, stable place with adequate space for air circulation. Allow extra space to open covers and trays.

The area should be well ventilated and away from direct sunlight or sources of heat, cold, and humidity. Do not set the machine close to the edge of your desk or table.



Printing is suitable for altitudes under 1,500 m (4,921 ft). Refer to the altitude setting to optimize your printing. (See "Altitude adjustment" on page 49.)

Place the machine on a flat, stable surface so that there is no incline greater than 2 mm (0.08 inch). Otherwise, printing quality may be affected.



2. Unpack the machine and check all the enclosed items.
3. Remove tape holding the machine securely.
4. Install the toner cartridge.
5. Load paper. (See "Loading paper in the tray" on page 55.)
6. Make sure that all cables are connected to the machine.
7. Turn the machine on.

## SUPPLIED SOFTWARE

After you have set up your machine and connected it to your computer., you must install the printer and scanner software using the supplied CD . The software CD provides you with the following software.



OS	CONTENTS
Windows	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Printer driver:</b> Use this driver to take full advantage of your machine's features.</li> <li>• <b>PostScript Printer Driver:</b> Use the PostScript driver to print documents with complex fonts and graphics in the PS language.</li> <li>• <b>Scanner driver:</b> TWAIN and Windows Image Acquisition (WIA) drivers are available for scanning documents on your machine.</li> <li>• <b>Smart Panel:</b> This program allows you to monitor the machine's status and alerts you when an error occurs during printing.</li> <li>• <b>SmarThru Office<sup>a</sup>:</b> This program is the accompanying Windows-based software for your multifunctional machine.</li> <li>• <b>Samsung Scan Manager:</b> You can find out about Scan Manager program information and installed scan driver's condition.</li> <li>• <b>SetIP:</b> Use this program to set your machine's TCP/IP addresses.</li> </ul>
Macintosh	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>PostScript Printer Driver:</b> Use this file to run your machine from a Macintosh computer and print documents.</li> <li>• <b>Scanner driver:</b> TWAIN driver is available for scanning documents on your machine.</li> <li>• <b>Smart Panel:</b> This program allows you to monitor the machine's status and alerts you when an error occurs during printing.</li> <li>• <b>Scan Manager:</b> You can find out about Scan Manager program information and installed scan driver's condition.</li> <li>• <b>SetIP:</b> Use this program to set your machine's TCP/IP addresses.</li> </ul>
Linux	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Unified Linux Driver:</b> Use this driver to take full advantage of your machine's features.</li> <li>• <b>Printer Description (PPD) file:</b> Use this file to run your machine from a Linux computer and print documents.</li> <li>• <b>SANE:</b> Use this driver to scan documents.</li> <li>• <b>Smart Panel:</b> This program allows you to monitor the machine's status and alerts you when an error occurs during printing.</li> <li>• <b>SetIP:</b> Use this program to set your machine's TCP/IP addresses.</li> </ul>

a. Allows you to edit a scanned image in various ways using a powerful image editor and to send the image by email. You can also open another image editor program, such as Adobe Photoshop, from SmarThru Office . For details, refer to the on screen help supplied on the SmarThru Office program. (See "Smarthru Office" on page 101.)

## SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

Before you begin, ensure that your system meets the following requirements:

## Windows

Your machine supports the following Windows operating systems.

OPERATING SYSTEM	REQUIREMENT (RECOMMENDED)		
	CPU	RAM	FREE HDD SPACE
Windows 2000	Pentium II 400 MHz (Pentium III 933 MHz)	64 MB (128 MB)	600 MB
Windows XP	Pentium III 933 MHz (Pentium IV 1 GHz)	128 MB (256 MB)	1.5 GB
Windows Server 2003	Pentium III 933 MHz (Pentium IV 1 GHz)	128 MB (512 MB)	1.25 GB to 2 GB
Windows Vista	Pentium IV 3 GHz	512 MB (1024 MB)	15 GB
Windows Server 2008	Pentium IV 1 GHz (Pentium IV 2 GHz)	512 MB (2048 MB)	10 GB



- Internet Explorer 5.0 or higher is the minimum requirement for all Windows operating systems.
- Users who have an administrator right can install the software.
- **Windows Terminal Services** is compatible with this machine.

## Macintosh

OPERATING SYSTEM	REQUIREMENTS (RECOMMENDED)		
	CPU	RAM	FREE HDD SPACE
Mac OS X 10.3 ~ 10.4	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Intel Processors</li> <li>• PowerPC G4/ G5</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 128 MB for a PowerPC based Mac (512 MB)</li> <li>• 512 MB for a Intel-based Mac (1 GB)</li> </ul>	1 GB
Mac OS X 10.5	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Intel Processors</li> <li>• 867 MHz or faster Power PC G4/ G5</li> </ul>	512 MB (1 GB)	1 GB

Linux

ITEM	REQUIREMENTS
Operating system	RedHat 8.0, 9.0 (32bit) RedHat Enterprise Linux WS 4, 5 (32/64bit) Fedora Core 1~7 (32/64bit) Mandrake 9.2 (32bit), 10.0, 10.1 (32/64bit) Mandriva 2005, 2006, 2007 (32/64bit) SuSE Linux 8.2, 9.0, 9.1 (32bit) SuSE Linux 9.2, 9.3, 10.0, 10.1, 10.2 (32/64bit) SuSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 9, 10 (32/64bit) Ubuntu 6.06, 6.10, 7.04 (32/64bit) Debian 3.1, 4.0 (32/64bit)
CPU	Pentium IV 2.4GHz (IntelCore2)
RAM	512 MB (1024 MB)
Free HDD space	1 GB (2GB)

- It is necessary to claim swap partition of 300 MB or larger for working with large scanned images.
- The Linux scanner driver supports the optical resolution at maximum.

INSTALLING USB CONNECTED MACHINE'S DRIVER

A locally connected machine is a machine directly attached to your computer using the USB cable. If your machine is attached to a network, skip the following steps below and go on to installing network connected machine's driver. (See "Installing wired network connected machine's driver" on page 40.)

- Selecting **Custom installation** allows you to choose programs to install.  
Only use an USB cable no longer then 3m (118 inch. ). Data might not be transferred to your machine.

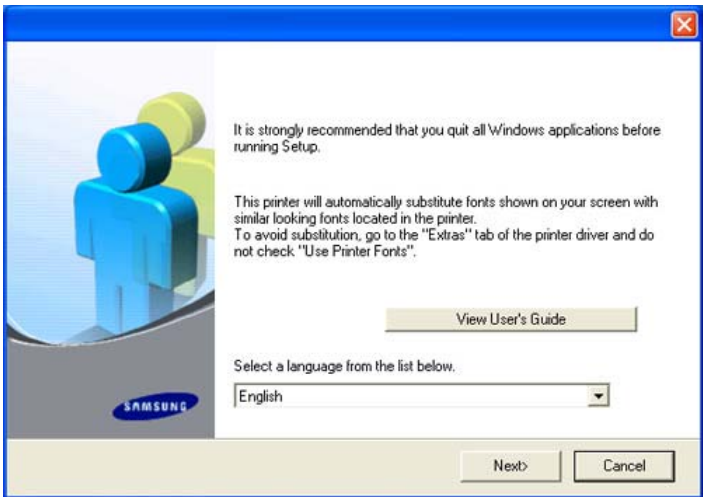
Windows

You can install the machine software using the typical or custom method. The following steps below are recommended for most users who use a machine directly connected to your computer. All components necessary for machine operations will be installed.

- Make sure that the machine is connected to your computer and powered on.
  - If the **"New Hardware Wizard"** window appears during the installation procedure, click  in the upper right corner of the box to close the window, or click **Cancel**.
- Insert the supplied software CD into your CD-ROM drive.
  - The software CD should automatically run and an installation window appear.
  - If the installation window does not appear, click **Start** and then **Run**. Type X:\Setup.exe, replacing "X" with the letter which represents your drive. Click **OK**.
  - If you use Windows Vista, click **Start > All programs > Accessories > Run**. Type X:\Setup.exe replacing "X" with the letter which represents your drive and click **OK**.
  - If the **AutoPlay** window appears in Windows Vista, click **Run**

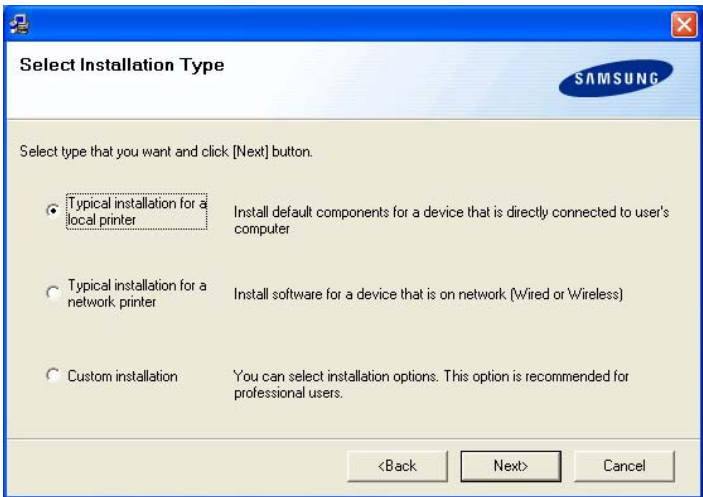
Setup.exe in **Install or run program** field, and click **Continue** in the **User Account Control** windows.

- Click **Next**.



If necessary, select a language from the drop-down list.

- Select **Typical installation for a local printer**. and then click **Next**.





- If your machine is not already connected to the computer, the following window will appear.



- After connecting the machine, click **Next**.

- If you don't want to connect the machine at this time, click **Next**, and **No** on the following screen. The installation will then start and a test page will not be printed at the end of the installation.
  - The installation window that appears in this User's Guide may differ depending on the machine and interface in use.
5. After the installation is finished, a window asking you to print a test page appears. If you choose to print a test page, select the checkbox and click **Next**. Otherwise, just click **Next** and skip.
  6. If the test page prints out correctly, click **Yes**.  
If not, click **No** to reprint it.
  7. To register as a user of the machine in order to receive information from Samsung, select the checkbox and click **Finish**. You are now registered to the Samsung web site.
  8. Otherwise, just click **Finish**.

-  If the printer driver does not work properly, uninstall the driver and reinstall it.  
For windows follow the steps below to uninstall the driver.
- a) Make sure that the machine is connected to your computer and powered on.
  - b) From the **Start** menu, select **Programs** or **All Programs > your printer driver name > Maintenance**.
  - c) Select **Remove** and click **Next**.  
You will see a component list so that you can remove any item individually.
  - d) Select the components you want to remove and then click **Next**.
  - e) When your computer asks you to confirm your selection, click **Yes**.  
The selected driver and all of its components are removed from your computer.
  - f) After the software is removed, click **Finish**.

-  If you want to reinstall the driver over the currently installed driver via the provided CD-ROM, insert the CD-ROM then, the window with overwriting confirmation message appears. Simply confirm it to proceed to the next step. Next steps are same as the first installation you have made.


## Macintosh

The software CD that came with your machine provides you with the Driver files that allows you to use the CUPS driver or PostScript driver (only available when you use a machine which supports the PostScript driver) for printing on a Macintosh computer.


Also, it provides you with the TWAIN driver for scanning on a Macintosh computer.

1. Make sure that the machine is connected to your computer and powered on.
2. Insert the supplied software CD into your CD-ROM drive.
3. Double-click the CD-ROM icon that appears on your Macintosh desktop.
4. Double-click the **MAC\_Installer** folder.
5. Double-click the **Installer** icon.
6. Enter the password and click **OK**.
7. The Samsung Installer window opens. Click **Continue**.
8. Select **Easy Install** and click **Install**. **Easy Install** is recommended for most users. All components necessary for machine operations will be installed.

If you select **Custom Install**, you can choose individual components to install.



9. When the message which warns that all applications will close on your computer appears, click **Continue**.
10. After the installation is finished, click **Quit**.  
 If you have installed scan driver, click **Restart**.
11. Open the **Applications** folder > **Utilities > Print Setup Utility**.
  - For Mac OS X 10.5, open the **Applications** folder > **System Preferences** and click **Print & Fax**.
12. Click **Add** on the **Printer List**.
  - For Mac OS X 10.5, press the "+" icon; a display window will pop up.
13. For Mac OS X 10.3, select the **USB** tab.
  - For Mac OS X 10.4, click **Default Browser** and find the USB connection.
  - For Mac OS X 10.5, click **Default** and find the USB connection.
14. For Mac OS X 10.3, if Auto Select does not work properly, select **Samsung** in **Printer Model** and your machine name in **Model Name**.
  - For Mac OS X 10.4, if Auto Select does not work properly, select **Samsung** in **Print Using** and your machine name in **Model**.
  - For Mac OS X 10.5, if Auto Select does not work properly, select **Select a driver to use...** and your machine name in **Print Using**.

Your machine appears on the **Printer List**, and is set as the default machine.


15. Click **Add**.  
 If the printer driver does not work properly, uninstall the driver and reinstall it.  
Follow steps below to uninstall the driver for Macintosh.
  - a) Make sure that the machine is connected to your computer and powered on.
  - b) Insert the supplied software CD into your CD-ROM drive.
  - c) Double-click CD-ROM icon that appears on your Macintosh desktop.
  - d) Double-click the **MAC\_Installer** folder.
  - e) Double-click the **Installer** icon.
  - f) Enter the password and click **OK**.
  - g) The Samsung Installer window opens. Click **Continue**.
  - h) Select **Uninstall** and click **Uninstall**.
  - i) When the message which warns that all applications will close on your computer appears, click **Continue**.
  - j) When the uninstall is done, click **Quit**.

## Linux

Follow the steps below to install the driver for Linux. While installing the driver, the Unified Linux Driver package will automatically be installed as well.

-  The supplied software CD provides you with the Unified Linux Driver package for using your machine with a Linux computer easily in UI based management tool.(See "Using the Linux Unified Driver Configurator" on page 102.)
1. Make sure that the machine is connected to your computer and powered on.
  2. When the **Administrator Login** window appears, type in "root" in the **Login** field and enter the system password.  
 You must log in as a super user (root) to install the machine software. If you are not a super user, ask your system administrator.
  3. Insert the supplied software CD into your CD-ROM drive.

The software CD will run automatically.


If the software CD does not run automatically, click the  icon at the bottom of the desktop. When the Terminal screen appears, type in the following:

If the software CD is secondary master and the location to mount is /mnt/cdrom,

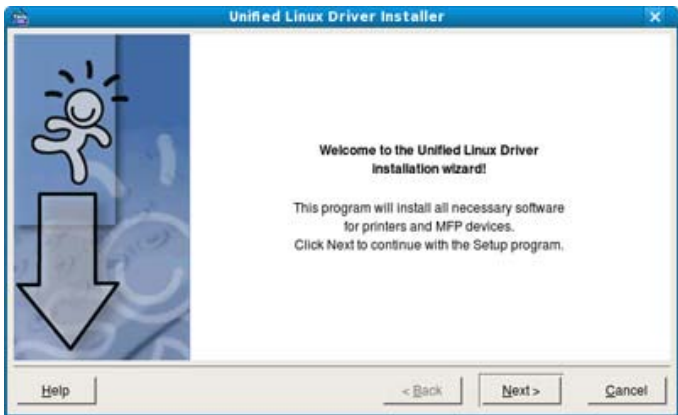
```
[root@localhost root]#mount -t iso9660 /dev/hdc /mnt/cdrom
[root@localhost root]#cd /mnt/cdrom/Linux
[root@localhost Linux]#./install.sh
```

If you still failed to run the software CD , type the followings in sequence:

```
[root@localhost root]#umount /dev/hdc
[root@localhost root]#mount -t iso9660 /dev/hdc /mnt/cdrom
```


 The installation program runs automatically if you have an autorun software package installed and configured.


4. When the welcome screen appears, click **Next**.




5. When the installation is complete, click **Finish**.

The installation program has added the Unified Driver Configurator desktop icon and the Unified Driver group to the system menu for your convenience. If you have any difficulties, consult the on screen help that is available through your system menu or can otherwise be called from the driver package Windows applications, such as **Unified Driver Configurator** or **Image Manager**.

-  Installing the driver in the text mode:
- If you do not use the graphical interface or have been unable to install the driver, you have to use the driver in the text mode.
  - Follow the steps 1 to 3, then type [root@localhost Linux]# ./install.sh. Follow the instructions on the terminal screen. The installation is completed.
  - When you want to uninstall the driver, follow the installation instructions above, but type [root@localhost Linux]# ./uninstall.sh on the terminal screen.

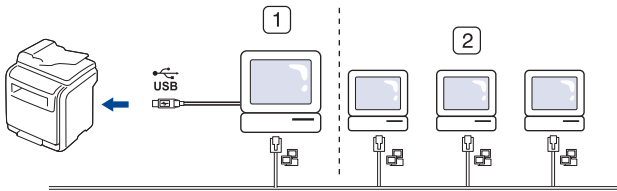
-  If the printer driver does not work properly, uninstall the driver and reinstall it.
- Follow the steps below steps to uninstall the driver for Linux.
- a) Make sure that the machine is connected to your computer and powered on.
  - b) When the **Administrator Login** window appears, type in "root" in the **Login** field and enter the system password.  
You must log in as a super user (root) to uninstall the printer driver. If you are not a super user, ask your system administrator.
  - c) Insert the supplied software CD into your CD-ROM drive.

- The software CD will run automatically.
- If the software CD does not run automatically, click the  icon at the bottom of the desktop. When the Terminal screen appears, type in:
- If the software CD is secondary master and the location to mount is /mnt/cdrom,
- ```
[root@localhost root]#mount -t iso9660 /dev/hdc /mnt/cdrom
[root@localhost root]#cd /mnt/cdrom/Linux
[root@localhost Linux]#./uninstall.sh
```
- The installation program runs automatically if you have an autorun software package installed and configured.
- d) Click **Uninstall**.
  - e) Click **Next**.
  - f) Click **Finish**.

## SHARING YOUR MACHINE LOCALLY

Follow the steps below to set up the computers to share your machine locally.

If the Host computer is directly connected to the machine with USB cable and is also connected to the local network environment, the client computer connected to the local network can use the shared machine through the host computer to print.



|   |                  |                                                                     |
|---|------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Host computer    | A computer which is directly connected to the machine by USB cable. |
| 2 | Client computers | Computers which use the machine shared through the host computer.   |

## Windows

### Setting up a host computer


1. Install your printer driver. (See "Installing USB connected machine's driver" on page 34.)
2. Click the Windows **Start** menu.
3. For Windows 2000, select **Settings > Printers**.
  - For Windows XP/2003 select **Printer and Faxes**.
  - For Windows Vista select **Control Panel > Hardware and Sound > Printers**.
4. Double-click your printer driver icon.
5. From the **Printer** menu, select **Sharing...**
6. Check the **Share this printer**.
7. Fill in the **Shared Name** field. Click **OK**.

### Setting up a client computer

1. Install your printer driver. (See "Installing USB connected machine's driver" on page 34.)
2. Click the Windows **Start** menu.
3. Select **All programs > Accessories > Window Explorer**.


4. Enter in IP address of the host computer and press Enter in your keyboard.



 In case host computer requires **User name** and **Password**, fill in User ID and password of the host computer account.

5. Right click the printer icon you want to share and select **Connect**.
6. If a set up complete message appears, click **OK**.
7. Open the file you want to print and start printing.

## Macintosh

 The following steps are for Mac OS X 10.5. Refer to Mac Help for other OS versions.

### Setting up a host computer

1. Install your printer driver. (See "Macintosh" on page 35, "Macintosh" on page 41.)
2. Open the **Applications** folder > **System Preferences** and click **Print & Fax**.
3. Select the printer to share in the **Printers list**.
4. Select **"Share this printer"**.

### Setting up a client computer

1. Install your printer driver. (See "Installing USB connected machine's driver" on page 34.)
2. Open the **Applications** folder > **System Preferences** and click **Print & Fax**.
3. Press the "+" icon.  
A display window showing the name of your shared printer appears.
4. Select your machine and click **Add**.



# network setup

This chapter gives you step-by-step instructions for setting up the network connected machine and software.

## This chapter includes:

- Network environment
- Introducing useful network programs

## NETWORK ENVIRONMENT


You need to set up the network protocols on the machine to use it as your network machine. You can set up the basic network settings through the machine's control panel.

The following table shows the network environments supported by the machine:

| ITEM                            | REQUIREMENTS                                                                                                                                                                  |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Network interface</b>        | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Ethernet 10/100 Base-TX</li><li>• 802.11 b/g Wireless LAN (Optional)</li></ul>                                                        |
| <b>Network operating system</b> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Windows 2000/XP/2003/2008/Vista</li><li>• Various Linux OS</li><li>• Mac OS X 10.3 ~ 10.5</li></ul>                                   |
| <b>Network protocols</b>        | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• TCP/IP</li><li>• Standard TCP/IP</li><li>• HTTP</li><li>• DHCP</li><li>• SNMP</li><li>• BOOTP</li><li>• LDAP</li><li>• SMTP</li></ul> |

## INTRODUCING USEFUL NETWORK PROGRAMS

There are several programs available to setup the network settings easily in network environment. For the network administrator especially, managing several machines on the network is possible.

 Before using the programs below, set the IP address first.

### SyncThru™ Web Service

Web server embedded on your network machine, which allows you to:

- Configure the network parameters necessary for the machine to connect to various network environments.
- Customize machine settings.

(See "Using SyncThru™ Web Service" on page 99.)

### SyncThru™ Web Admin Service

Web-based machine management solution for network administrators. SyncThru™ Web Admin Service provides you with an efficient way of managing network devices and lets you remotely monitor and troubleshoot network machines from any site with corporate internet access. Download this program from <http://solution.samsungprinter.com>.

- Using a wired network
- Using a wireless network

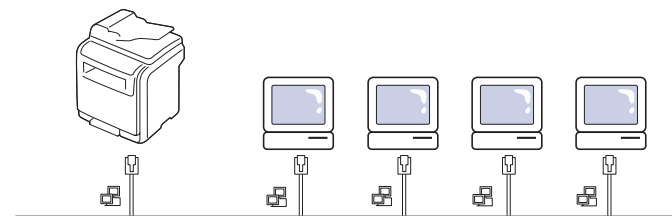
## SetIP

This utility program allows you to select a network interface and manually configure the IP addresses for use with the TCP/IP protocol. (See "IP setting using SetIP Program (Windows)" on page 39 or "IP setting using SetIP Program (Macintosh)" on page 39)

## USING A WIRED NETWORK

You must set up the network protocols on your machine to use it on your network. This chapter will show you how this is easily accomplished.

You can use network after connecting network cable to a corresponding port on your machine.



## Printing Configuration report

You can print a **Network Configuration Report** from the machine's control panel that will show the current machine's network settings. This will help you to set up a network and troubleshooting problems.

1. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
2. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **System Setup** and press **OK**.
3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Reports** and press **OK**.
4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Network Info.** and press **OK**.
5. Press **OK** when **Yes** highlights to confirm printing.

**Network Configuration Report** will then be printed out.

Using this **Network Configuration Report**, you can find your machine MAC address and IP address.

For example:

- MAC Address : 00:15:99:41:A2:78
- IP Address : 192.0.0.192

## Setting IP address

Firstly, you have to set up an IP address for network printing and managements. In most cases a new IP address will be automatically assigned by a DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol Server) located on the network.

In a few situations the IP address must be set manually. This is called a static IP and is often required in corporate Intranets for security reasons.

- **DHCP IP assignment:** Connect your machine to the network, and wait a

few minutes for the DHCP server to assign an IP address to the machine. Then, print the **Network Configuration Report** as explained above. If the report shows that the IP address has changed, the assignment was successful. You will see the new IP address in the report.

- **Static IP assignment:** Use SetIP program to change the IP address from your computer. If your machine has a control panel, you can also change IP address using the machine's control panel.

In an office environment, we recommend that you contact a network administrator to set this address for you.

### IP setting using control panel

1. Connect your machine to the network with an network cable.
2. Turned on the machine.
3. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Network** and press **OK**.
5. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **TCP/IP** and press **OK**.
6. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Static** and press **OK**.
7. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **IP Address** and press **OK**.
8. Enter the IP address using numeric keypad and press **OK**.
9. Enter other parameters, such as the **Subnet Mask** and **Gateway** and press **OK**.
10. After entering all parameters, press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.

Now go to "Installing wired network connected machine's driver" on page 40.

### IP setting using SetIP Program (Windows)

This program is for manually setting the network IP address of your machine using its MAC address to communicate with the machine. A MAC address is the hardware serial number of the network interface and can be found in the **Network Configuration Report**.


For using SetIP program, disable the computer firewall before continuing by performing the following:

1. Open **Control Panel**.
2. Double click **Security Center**.
3. Click **Windows Firewall**.
4. Disable the firewall.

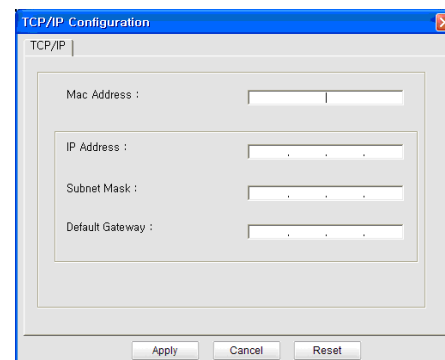
### Installing the program

1. Insert the Printer Software CD-ROM provided with your machine. When the driver CD runs automatically, close that window.
2. Start a web browser such as Internet Explorer and open the X drive. (X represents your CD-ROM drive.)
3. Double-click **Application > SetIP**.
4. Double-click **Setup.exe** to install this program.
5. Click **OK**. If necessary, select a language from the drop-down list.
6. Follow the instructions in the window and complete the installation.

### Starting the program

1. Connect your machine and the computer using network cable.
2. Turned on the machine.
3. From the Windows **Start** menu, select **All Programs > Samsung Network Printer Utilities > SetIP > SetIP**.
4. Click on the  icon (third from left) in the SetIP window to open the TCP/IP configuration window.

5. Enter the machine's new information into the configuration window as follows:



- **MAC Address** : Find the machine's MAC address from the **Network Configuration Report** and enter it without the colons. For example, 00:15:99:29:51:A8 becomes 0015992951A8.



MAC address is a hardware serial number of the machine's network interface and can be found in the **Network Configuration Report**.

- **IP Address**: Enter a new IP address for your machine.
  - **Subnet Mask**: Enter a new Subnet Mask for your machine.
  - **Default Gateway**: Enter a new Gateway for your machine.
6. Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**. The machine will automatically print the **Network Configuration Report**. Confirm that all the settings are correct.
  7. Click **Exit** to close the SetIP program.
  8. If necessary, restart the computer's firewall.

### IP setting using SetIP Program (Macintosh)

For using SetIP program, disable the computer firewall before continuing by performing the following:

1. Open **System Preferences**.
2. Click **Security**.
3. Click the **Firewall** menu.
4. Turn firewall off.



The following instructions may vary for your model.

1. Connect your machine and the computer using network cable.
2. Insert the Installation CD-ROM, and open the disk window. Open the **MAC\_Installer > MAC\_Printer > SetIP > SetIPApplet.html**.
3. Double click the file and **Safari** will automatically open, then select **Trust**. The browser will open the **SetIPApplet.html** page that shows the printer's name and IP address information.
4. Highlight the printer information row and select the **Setup icon**, which is the second icon from the left in the application menu bar. A TCP/IP Configuration window will open.



If the printer was not shown in the information row, select the Manual Setting icon (third from left) to open the TCP/IP Configuration window.

5. Enter the printer's new information into the configuration window as follows. In a corporate intranet, you may need to have this information assigned by a network manager before proceeding.
  - **MAC Address**: Find the machine's MAC address from the **Network Configuration Report** and enter it without the colons. For example, 00:15:99:29:51:A8 becomes 0015992951A8.

 The printer's MAC address is the hardware serial number of the on-board network interface and can be found on the **Network Configuration Report**.

- **IP Address:** Enter a new IP address for your machine.
  - **Subnet Mask:** Enter a new Subnet Mask for your machine.
  - **Default Gateway:** Enter a new Gateway for your machine.
6. Select **Apply**, then **OK**, and **OK** again. The printer will automatically print the configuration report. Confirm that all the settings are correct. **Quit Safari.** You may close and eject the installation CD-ROM. If necessary, restart the computer's firewall. You have successfully changed the IP address, subnet mask, and gateway.

## Network parameter setting


You can also set up the various network settings through the network administration programs such as SyncThru™ Web Admin Service and SyncThru™ Web Service.

## Installing wired network connected machine's driver

You must install the printer driver software for printing. The software includes drivers, applications, and other user friendly programs.

Make sure that the network setup for your machine is completed. All applications should be closed on your computer before beginning installation.

### Windows

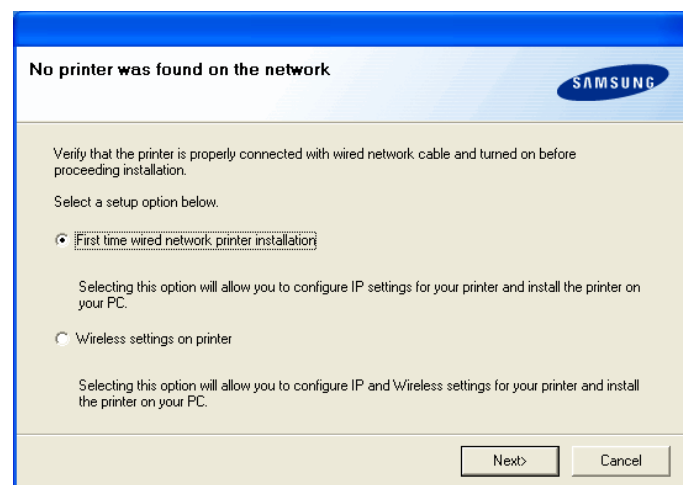
 The following procedure is based on Windows XP. The procedure and popup window which appears during the installation may differ depending on the operating system, machine features, or the interface in use.

This is recommended for most users. All components necessary for machine operations will be installed.

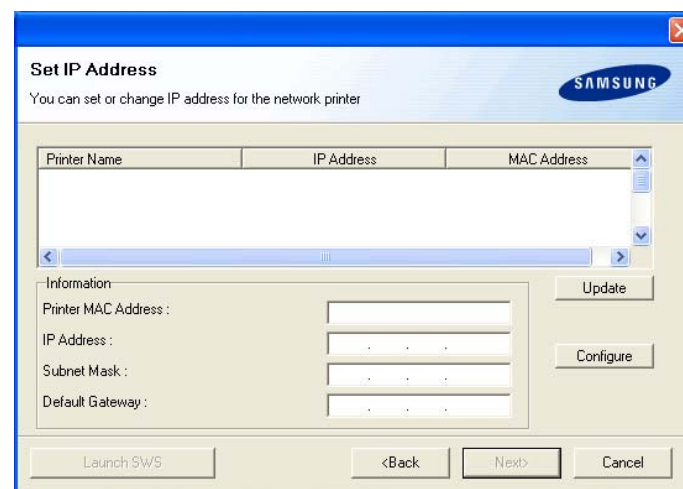
1. Make sure that the machine is connected to your network and powered on. Also, your machine's IP address should have been set.
2. Insert the supplied software CD into your CD-ROM drive. The software CD should automatically run and an installation window appear.
  - If the installation window does not appear, click **Start** and then **Run**. Type X:\Setup.exe, replacing "X" with the letter which represents your drive. Click **OK**.
  - If you use Windows Vista, click **Start > All programs > Accessories > Run**. Type X:\Setup.exe replacing "X" with the letter which represents your drive and click **OK**.
  - If the **AutoPlay** window appears in Windows Vista, click **Run Setup.exe** in **Install or run program** field, and click **Continue** in the **User Account Control** windows.
3. Click **Next**.  
If necessary, select a language from the drop-down list.
4. Select **Typical installation for a network printer** and then click **Next**.

 If your printer is not connected to the network, the following

window will appear. Select a setup option you want, click **Next**.



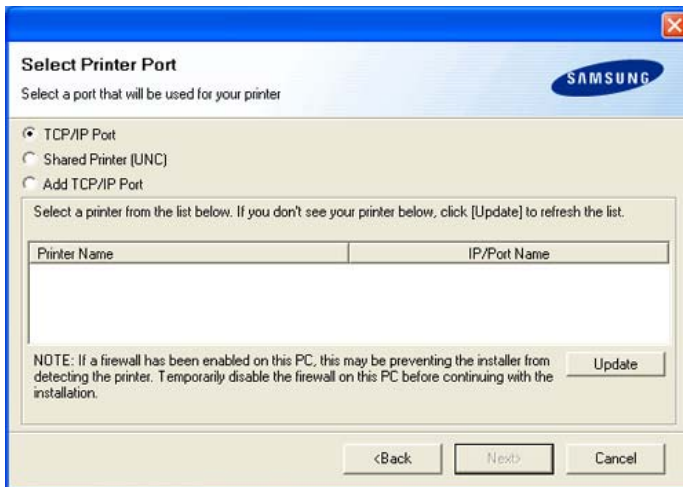
Then the **Set IP Address** window appears. Do as follows:



- a) Select a printer to be set with a specific IP address from the list.
- b) Configure an IP address, subnet mask, and gateway for the printer manually and click **Configure** to set the specific IP address for the network printer.
- c) Click **Next**, and go to step 6.
- d) You can also set the network printer via **SyncThru Web Service**, an embedded web server. Click **Launch SWS** on **Set IP Address** windows. Your machine's embedded website opens.



- The list of machines available on the network appears. Select the machine you want to install from the list and then click **Next**.



- If you do not see your machine on the list, click **Update** to refresh the list, or select **Add TCP/IP Port** to add your machine to the network. To add the machine to the network, enter the port name and the IP address for the machine. To verify your machine's IP address or the MAC address, print a Network Configuration page.
  - To find a shared machine (UNC Path), select **Shared Printer [UNC]** and enter the shared name manually or find a shared printer by clicking the **Browse** button.
  - If you cannot find your machine in network, turn off the firewall and click **Update**. For Windows operating system, click **Start > Control Panel > Windows Firewall**, and inactivate this option. For other operating system, refer to its on-line guide.
- After the installation is finished, a window asking you to print a test page appears. If you choose to print a test page, select the checkbox and click **Next**. Otherwise, just click **Next** and skip.
  - If the test page prints out correctly, click **Yes**. If not, click **No** to reprint it.
  - To register as a user of the machine in order to receive information from Samsung, select the checkbox and click **Finish**. You are now registered to the Samsung web site.
  - Otherwise, just click **Finish**.
- If the printer driver does not work properly, uninstall the driver and reinstall it.  
For windows follow the steps below to uninstall the driver.
    - Make sure that the machine is connected to your computer and powered on.
    - From the **Start** menu, select **Programs** or **All Programs** > your printer driver name > **Maintenance**.
    - Select **Remove** and click **Next**.  
You will see a component list so that you can remove any item individually.
    - Select the components you want to remove and then click **Next**.
    - When your computer asks you to confirm your selection, click **Yes**.  
The selected driver and all of its components are removed from your computer.

- After the software is removed, click **Finish**.

## Macintosh

- Make sure that the machine is connected to your network and powered on. Also, your machine's IP address should have been set.
- Insert the supplied software CD into your CD-ROM drive.
- Double-click the CD-ROM icon that appears on your Macintosh desktop.
- Double-click the **MAC\_Installer** folder.
- Double-click the **Installer** icon.
- Enter the password and click **OK**.
- The Samsung Installer window opens. Click **Continue**.
- Select **Easy Install** and click **Install**. **Easy Install** is recommended for most users. All components necessary for machine operations will be installed.  
If you select **Custom Install**, you can choose individual components to install.
- When the message which warns that all applications will close on your computer appears, click **Continue**.
- Select **Typical installation for a network print** and click **OK**.
  - The certification window appears, click **Trust**. See "IP setting using SetIP Program (Macintosh)" on page 39.
- After the installation is finished, click **Quit**.
  - If you have installed scan driver, click **Restart**.
- Open the **Applications** folder > **Utilities** > **Print Setup Utility**.
  - For Mac OS X 10.5, open the **Applications** folder > **System Preferences** and click **Print & Fax**.
- Click **Add** on the **Printer List**.
  - For Mac OS X 10.5, press the "+" icon; a display window will pop up.
- For Mac OS X 10.3, select the **IP Printing** tab.
  - For Mac OS X 10.4, click **IP Printer**.
  - For Mac OS X 10.5, click **IP**.
- Select **Socket/HP Jet Direct** in **Printer Type**.  
When printing a document containing many pages, printing performance may be enhanced by choosing Socket for **Printer Type** option.
- Enter the machine's IP address in the **Printer Address** field.
- Enter the queue name in the **Queue Name** field. If you cannot determine the queue name for your machine server, try using the default queue first.
- For Mac OS X 10.3, if Auto Select does not work properly, select **Samsung** in **Printer Model** and your machine name in **Model Name**.
  - For Mac OS X 10.4, if Auto Select does not work properly, select **Samsung** in **Print Using** and your machine name in **Model**.
  - For Mac OS X 10.5, if Auto Select does not work properly, choose **Select a driver to use...** and your machine name in **Print Using**.  
Your machine's IP address appears on the **Printer List**, and is set as the default machine.
- Click **Add**.
  - If the printer driver does not work properly, uninstall the driver and reinstall it.  
Follow steps below to uninstall the driver for Macintosh.

- a) Make sure that the machine is connected to your computer and powered on.
- b) Insert the supplied software CD into your CD-ROM drive.
- c) Double-click CD-ROM icon that appears on your Macintosh desktop.
- d) Double-click the **MAC\_Installer** folder.
- e) Double-click the **Installer** icon.
- f) Enter the password and click **OK**.
- g) The Samsung Installer window opens. Click **Continue**.
- h) Select **Uninstall** and click **Uninstall**.
- i) When the message which warns that all applications will close on your computer appears, click **Continue**.
- j) When the uninstall is done, click **Quit**.

## Linux

1. Make sure that the machine is connected to your network and powered on. Also, your machine's IP address should have been set.
2. Insert the supplied software CD into your CD-ROM drive.
3. Double-click CD-ROM icon that appears on your Linux desktop.
4. Double-click the **Linux** folder.
5. Double-click the **install.sh** icon.
6. The Samsung Installer window opens. Click **Continue**.
7. The Add printer wizard window opens. Click **Next**.
8. Select Network printer and click **Search** button.
9. The Printer's IP address and model name appears on list field.
10. Select your machine and click **Next**.

## USING A WIRELESS NETWORK

If you have installed a optional wireless network card, you must set up the network protocols on your machine to use it on your network. This chapter will show you how this is easily accomplished.

Before starting, please locate the crossover network cable and the Printer Software Installation CD-ROM provided with your machine (;printer). You may need to contact a network administrator or the person that set up your wireless network for information regarding the configuration.

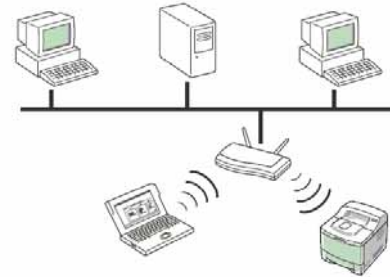
If you are already aware of your machine's IP address configured and this IP address is available, you may go to configuring the machine's wireless network directly. (See "Configuring the machine's wireless network" on page 44.)

## Wireless network environments

### Infrastructure mode

An Infrastructure mode network is the most common wireless network configuration in a home or office consisting of a wireless router, or an

access point, that connects all the computers and other networked devices into a common local area network (LAN).



### Ad-hoc mode

An Ad-hoc mode network provides peer to peer communication. In an Ad-hoc mode network, wireless devices and computers communicate directly with each other, without using an access point.



## Printing Network Configuration Report

You can print a **Network Configuration Report** from the machine's control panel that will show the current machine's network settings. This will help you to set up a network and troubleshooting problems.

1. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
2. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **System Setup** and press **OK**.
3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Reports** and press **OK**.
4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Network Info.** and press **OK**.
5. Press **OK** when **Yes** highlights to confirm printing.

**Network Configuration Report** will then be printed out.

Please review your machine's User's Guide to learn of additional details. Using this **Network Configuration Report**, you can find your machine MAC address and IP address.

For example:

- MAC Address : 00:15:99:41:A2:78
- IP Address : 192.0.0.192

## Setting IP address

Firstly, you have to set up an IP address for network printing and managements. In most cases a new IP address will be automatically assigned by a DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol Server) located on the network.

In a few situations the IP address must be set manually. This is called a static IP and is often required in corporate intranets for security reasons.

- **DHCP IP assignment:** Connect your machine to the network, and wait a few minutes for the DHCP server to assign an IP address to the machine. Then, print the **Network Configuration Report** as explained above. If the report shows that the IP address has changed, the assignment was successful. You will see the new IP address in the

report.

- **Static IP assignment:** Use SetIP program to change the IP address from your computer. If your machine has a control panel, you can also change IP address using the machine's control panel.

In an office environment, we recommend that you contact a network administrator to set this address for you.

### IP setting using control panel

1. Connect your machine to the network with an RJ-45 Ethernet cable.
2. Turned on the machine.
3. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Network** and press **OK**.
5. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **TCP/IP** and press **OK**.
6. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Static** and press **OK**.
7. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **IP Address** and press **OK**.
8. Enter the IP address using numeric keypad and press **OK**.
9. Enter other parameters, such as the **Subnet Mask** and **Gateway** and press **OK**.
10. After entering all parameters, press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.

Now go to "Installing wireless network connected machine's driver" on page 46.

### IP setting using SetIP Program (Windows)

This program is for manually setting the network IP address of your machine using its MAC address to communicate with the machine. A MAC address is the hardware serial number of the network interface and can be found in the **Network Configuration Report**.



- You only need to run this program if your network requires a static IP address. Otherwise, you may proceed to the **configuring the machine's wireless network** of this document. If you are unsure of this requirement ask the system administrator or the person who has set up your local network. (See "Configuring the machine's wireless network" on page 44.)
- You can only use the SetIP program when your machine is connected to a network or directly connected to a computer with the crossover network cable included with your machine. In most cases we recommend using the crossover cable. You will be asked to connect this cable in a moment.


For using SetIP program, disable the computer firewall before continuing by performing the following:

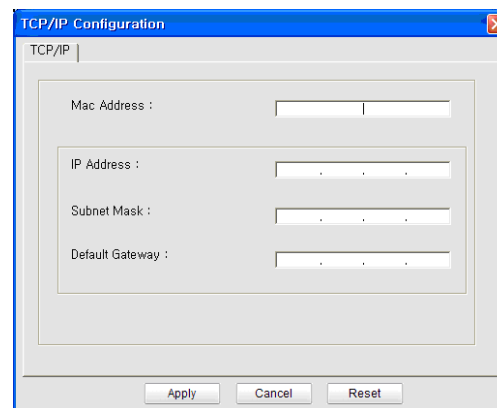
1. Open **Control Panel**.
2. Double click **Security Center**.
3. Click **Windows Firewall**.
4. Disable the firewall.

### Installing the program

1. Insert the Printer Software CD-ROM provided with your machine. When the driver CD runs automatically, close that window.
2. Start a web browser such as Internet Explorer and open the X drive. (X represents your CD-ROM drive.)
3. Double-click **Application > SetIP**.
4. Double-click **Setup.exe** to install this program.
5. Click **OK**. If necessary, select a language from the drop-down list.
6. Follow the instructions in the window and complete the installation.

### Starting the program

1. Connect your machine and the computer using crossover network cable.
2. Temporarily disable the computer firewall before continuing by doing the following:
3. From the Windows **Start** menu, select **All Programs > Samsung Network Printer Utilities > SetIP > SetIP**.
4. Click on the  icon (third from left) in the SetIP window to open the TCP/IP configuration window.
5. Enter the machine's new information into the configuration window as follows:



- **MAC Address** : Find the machine's MAC address from the **Network Configuration Report** and enter it without the colons. For example, 00:15:99:29:51:A8 becomes 0015992951A8.



MAC address is a hardware serial number of the machine's network interface and can be found in the **Network Configuration Report**.

- **IP Address**: Enter a new IP address for your machine. For example, if your computer's IP address is 192.168.1.150, enter 192.168.1.X. (X is number between 1 and 254 other than the computer's address.)
  - **Subnet Mask**: Enter this exactly the same as the computer's Subnet Mask.
  - **Default Gateway**: Enter this exactly the same as the computer's Default Gateway.
6. Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**. The machine will automatically print the **Network Configuration Report**. Confirm that all the settings are correct.
  7. Click **Exit** to close the SetIP program.
  8. If necessary, restart the computer's firewall.

### IP setting using SetIP Program (Macintosh)


For using SetIP program, disable the computer firewall before continuing by performing the following:


1. Open **System Preferences**.
2. Click **Security**.
3. Click the **Firewall** menu.
4. Turn firewall off.



The following instructions may vary for your model.

1. Connect the crossover network cable between the printer and the **Macintosh**.
2. Insert the Installation CD-ROM, and open the disk window. Open the **MAC\_Installer > MAC\_Printer > SetIP > SetIPApplet.html**.
3. Double click the file and **Safari** will automatically open, then select **Trust**. The browser will open the **SetIPApplet.html** page that shows the printer's name and IP address information.
4. Highlight the printer information row and select the **Setup icon**, which is the second icon from the left in the application menu bar. A TCP/IP Configuration window will open.

 If the printer was not shown in the information row, select the Manual Setting icon (third from left) to open the TCP/IP Configuration window.

5. Enter the printer's new information into the configuration window as follows. In a corporate intranet, you may need to have this information assigned by a network manager before proceeding.
  - **MAC Address:** Use this field to enter the printer's MAC address (without the colons). For example, a MAC address of 00:15:99:29:51:A8 must be entered as 015992951A8.
  -  **MAC address** is the hardware serial number of the machine's network interface and can be found on the **Network Configuration Report**.
  - **IP Address:** Enter a new IP address for your machine. For example, if your computer's IP address is 192.168.1.133, enter 192.168.1.X, where X is number between 1 and 254 (excluding the 133 used for the computer.)
  - **Subnet Mask:** Enter this exactly the same as the computer's Subnet Mask.
  - **Default Gateway:** Enter this exactly the same as the computer's Default Gateway.
6. Select **Apply**, then **OK**, and **OK** again. The printer will automatically print the configuration report. Confirm that all the settings are correct. **Quit Safari**. You may close and eject the installation CD-ROM. If necessary, restart the computer's firewall. You have successfully changed the IP address, subnet mask, and gateway.

## Network parameter setting

You can also set up the various network settings through the network administration programs such as SyncThru™ Web Admin Service and SyncThru™ Web Service.

## Restoring factory default settings

You can restore factory default settings to the machine by using **SyncThru™ Web Service**. You may need to reset the machine to the factory default settings when machine that you are using is connected to new network environment.

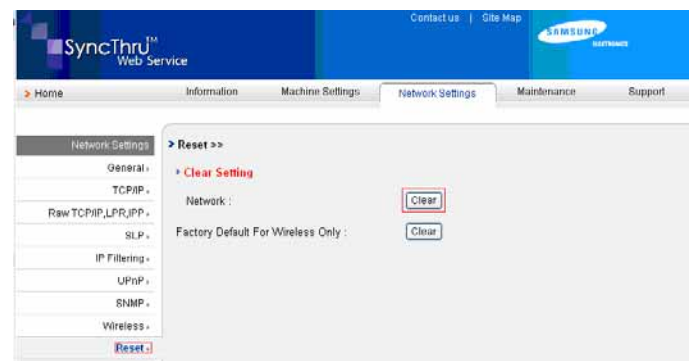
### Restoring factory default settings using SyncThru™ Web Service

1. Start a web browser such as Internet Explorer, Safari or Firefox and enter your machine's new IP address in the browser window. For example,




2. When the **SyncThru™ Web Service** window opens, click **Network Settings**.

3. Click **Reset**. Then, click **Clear** for network.



4. Turn off and restart machine to apply settings.

 You can also set the factory default settings on the control panel. Select **Clear Settings** in **Network** menu. (See "Network" on page 95.)

## Configuring the machine's wireless network

Before starting you will need to know the network name(SSID) of your wireless network and the network key if it is encrypted. This information was set when the wireless router(access point) was installed. If you do not know about your wireless environment, please ask the person who has set up your network.

To configure wireless parameters, you can use both control panel and **SyncThru™ Web Service**.

### Using the control panel

1. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
2. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Network** and press **OK**.
3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Wireless** and press **OK**.
4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **WLAN Settings** and press **OK**.
5. Press the up/down arrow to select the setup method you want highlights and press **OK**.
  - **Wizard:** The wireless network interface card in your printer searches for wireless networks in the area and shows the results.
  - **Custom:** You can configure the wireless settings according to your needs.

### Wizard mode

1. The wireless network interface card on your machine searches for wireless network in the area and shows the results.
2. Press the up/down arrow to select a network you want to use in **Search List** and press **OK**. You can select a network using SSID.
3. When None appears in WLAN Security on the display, press **OK** to save your selection. go to step 6.  
If you see another messages, go to the next step.
4. According to the network you select, WLAN security encryption type will be **WEP** or **WPA**.
  - In case of **WEP**, Press the up/down to select **Open System** or **SharedKey**.
    - **Open System:** **Authentication** is not used, and **Encryption** may or may not be used, depending on the need for data security. Enter the **WEP Key** using number keypad after selecting **Open System**.
    - **SharedKey:** **Authentication** is used. A device that has a proper WEP Key can access the network. Enter the **WEP Key** using number keypad after selecting **SharedKey**.



- In case of **WPA**, Enter the **WPA Key** using number keypad. The Key length should be between 8 to 63 characters long.

5. Press **OK**.

6. Press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.



- **SSID**: SSID (Service Set Identifier) is a name that identifies a wireless network. Access points and wireless devices attempting to connect to a specific wireless network must use the same SSID. The SSID is case-sensitive.
- **WEP**: WEP (Wired Equivalent Privacy) is a security protocol preventing unauthorized access to your wireless network. WEP encrypts the data portion of each packet exchanged on a wireless network using a 64-bit or 128-bit WEP encryption key.
- **WPA**: WPA authorizes and identifies users based on a secret key that changes automatically at regular intervals. WPA also uses TKIP (Temporal Key Integrity Protocol) and AES (Advanced Encryption Standard) for data encryption.

### Custom mode

1. Enter the SSID when **Edit SSID** appears on the top line of the display, the name that identifies a wireless network. SSID is case-sensitive so you need to enter it carefully. Press **OK**.
2. Select the type of wireless connections. Press the up/down arrow to select the method of **Operation Mode** you want and press **OK**.
  - **Ad-hoc**: Allows wireless devices to communicate directly with each other in a peer-to-peer environment. Go to step 3.
  - **Infrastructure**: Allows wireless devices to communicate with each other through an access point. Go to step 4.
3. Press the up/down arrow to select the method of **Channel** you want and press **OK**. If you select **Auto**, the wireless network interface card on your machine will automatically adjust the channels.
4. Press the left/right arrow to select the method of **WLAN Security** you want and press **OK**.

- **None**: This is used when the validation of a wireless device's identity and data encryption are not required for your network. Open system is used for IEEE 802.11 authentication.
- **Static WEP**: This uses the WEP (Wired Equivalent Privacy) algorithm suggested by IEEE 802.11 standard for security. Static WEP security mode requires a proper WEP key for data encryption, decryption, and IEEE 802.11 authentication. Press the left/right arrow to select the setup method you want in **Authentication** and press **OK**.
  - **Open System**: Authentication is not used, and encryption may or may not be used, depending on the need for data security. Enter the **WEP Key** using number keypad after selecting **Open System** and then press **OK**.
  - **SharedKey**: Authentication is used. A device that has a proper **WEP Key** can access the network. Enter the **WEP Key** using number keypad after selecting **SharedKey** and then press **OK**.
- **WPA-PSK or WPA2-PSK**: You can select **WPA-PSK** or **WPA2-PSK** to authenticate the print server based on WPA Pre-Shared Key. This uses a shared secret key (generally called Pre Shared Key passphrase) which is manually configured on the access point and each of its clients.

a. Press **OK** when **WPA-PSK** or **WPA2-PSK** appears on the bottom line of the display.

b. Press the up/down arrow to select **TKIP** or **AES** in **Encryption** and press **OK**. If you select **WPA2-PSK**, press the up/down arrow to select **AES** or **TKIP + AES** in **Encryption** and press **OK**.

c. Enter the **WPA Key** using number keypad and press **OK**.

5. When you have finished, press **Stop/Clear** to return to the ready mode. If you do not know about your wireless environment, please ask the network administrator.



Disconnect the network cable (standard or crossover). Your machine should then start communicating wirelessly with the network. In case of Ad-hoc mode, you can use a wireless LAN and wired LAN simultaneously.

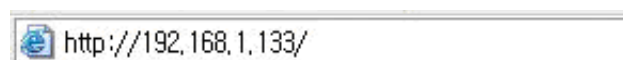
Now go to "Installing wireless network connected machine's driver" on page 46.

### Using SyncThru™ Web Service

Before starting wireless parameter configuration, make sure cable connection status.

1. Start a web browser such as Internet Explorer, Safari or Firefox and enter your machine's new IP address in the browser window.

For example,

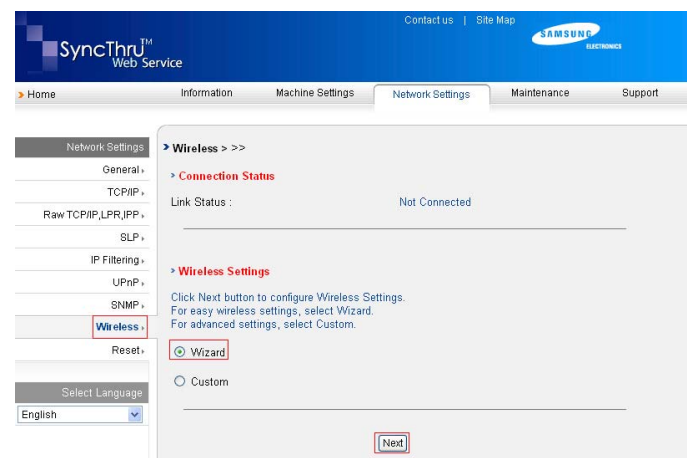


2. When the **SyncThru™ Web Service** window opens, click **Network Settings**.

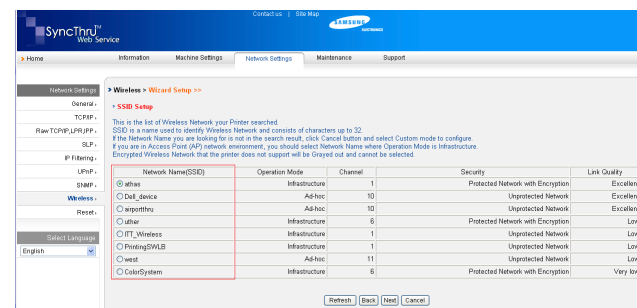
3. Click **Wireless** and select **Wizard**. Then, click **Next**.



**Wizard** will help you setup the wireless network configuration. However, if you want to set the wireless network directly, select **Custom**.




4. Select the one **Network Name(SSID)** in the list.



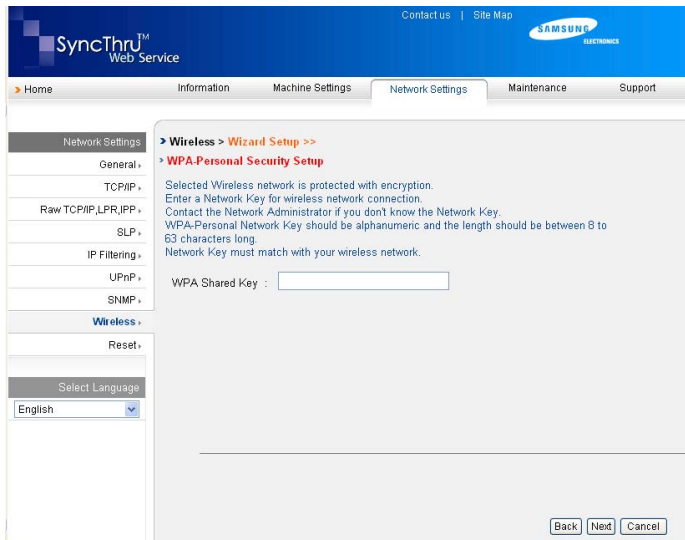
- **SSID**: SSID (Service Set Identifier) is a name that identifies a wireless network. Access points and wireless devices attempting to connect to a specific wireless network must use the same SSID. The SSID is case-sensitive.

- **Operation Mode:** **Operation Mode** refers to the type of wireless connections.
  - **Ad-hoc:** allows wireless devices to communicate directly with each other in a peer-to-peer environment.
  - **Infrastructure:** allows wireless devices to communicate with each other through an access point.


 If your network's **Operation Mode** is **Infrastructure**, select the SSID of the access point. If the **Operation Mode** is **Ad-hoc**, select the machine's SSID. Note that "airportthru" is the default SSID of your machine.

5. Click **Next**.

If wireless security setting window appears, enter the registered password (network key) and click **Next**.




6. The confirmation window appears, please check your wireless setup. If the setup is right, click **Apply**.
7. Click **OK**.

 Disconnect the network cable (standard or crossover). Your machine should then start communicating wirelessly with the network. In case of Ad-hoc mode, you can use a wireless LAN and wired LAN simultaneously.

Now go to "Installing wireless network connected machine's driver" on page 46.

## Installing wireless network connected machine's driver

You must install the printer driver software for printing. The software includes drivers, applications, and other user friendly programs.

-  The following procedure is based on Windows XP. The procedure and popup window which appears during the installation may differ depending on the operating system, machine features, or the interface in use.
- Make sure that the network setup for your machine is completed. All applications should be closed on your computer before beginning installation.
1. Insert the supplied software CD into your CD-ROM drive. The software CD should automatically run and an installation window appear.
    - If the installation window does not appear, click **Start** and then **Run**. Type X:\Setup.exe, replacing "X" with the letter which represents


your drive. Click **OK**.

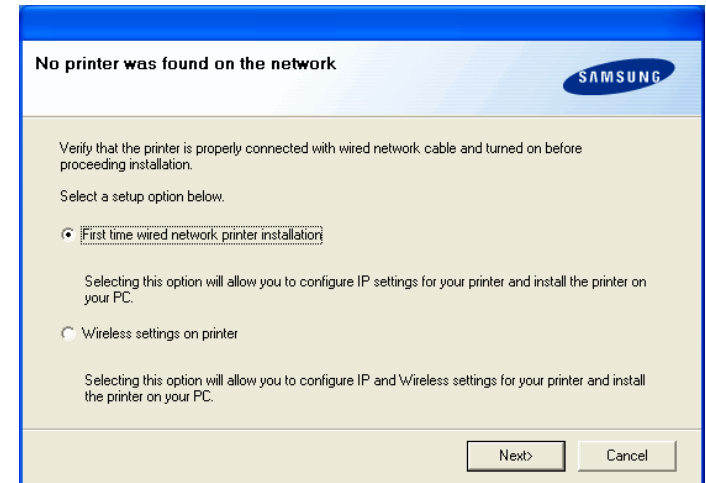
- If you use Windows Vista, click **Start > All programs > Accessories > Run**. Type X:\Setup.exe replacing "X" with the letter which represents your drive and click **OK**.
- If the **AutoPlay** window appears in Windows Vista, click **Run Setup.exe** in **Install or run program** field, and click **Continue** in the **User Account Control** windows.

2. Click **Next**.

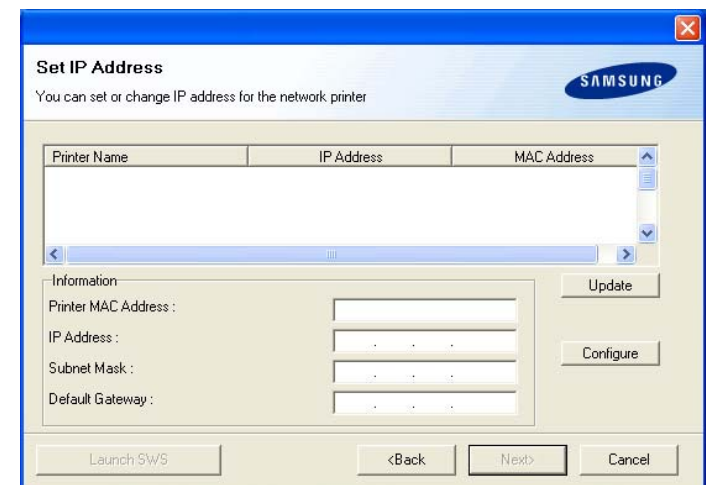
If necessary, select a language from the drop-down list.

3. Select **Typical installation for a network printer** and then click **Next**.

 If your printer is not connected to the network, the following window will appear. Select a setup option you want, click **Next**.

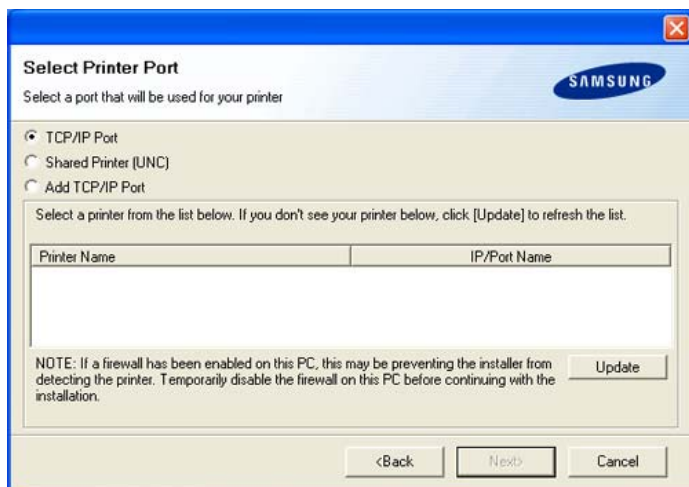


Then the **Set IP Address** window appears. Do as follows:



- a) Select a printer to be set with a specific IP address from the list.
- b) Configure an IP address, subnet mask, and gateway for the printer manually and click **Configure** to set the specific IP address for the network printer.
- c) Click **Next**, and go to step 6.
- d) You can also set the network printer via **SyncThru Web Service**, an embedded web server. Click **Launch SWS** on **Set IP Address** windows. Your machine's embedded website opens.

- The list of machines available on the network appears. Select the machine you want to install from the list and then click **Next**.



- If you do not see your machine on the list, click **Update** to refresh the list, or select **Add TCP/IP Port** to add your machine to the network. To add the machine to the network, enter the port name and the IP address for the machine. To verify your machine's IP address or the MAC address, print a Network Configuration page.
  - To find a shared machine (UNC Path), select **Shared Printer [UNC]** and enter the shared name manually or find a shared printer by clicking the **Browse** button.
  - If you cannot find your machine in network, turn off the firewall and click **Update**. For Windows operating system, click **Start > Control Panel > Windows Firewall**, and inactivate this option. For other operating system, refer to its on-line guide.
- After the installation is finished, a window asking you to print a test page appears. If you choose to print a test page, select the checkbox and click **Next**. Otherwise, just click **Next** and skip.
- If the test page prints out correctly, click **Yes**.  
If not, click **No** to reprint it.
- To register as a user of the machine in order to receive information from Samsung, select the checkbox and click **Finish**. You are now registered to the Samsung web site.
- Otherwise, just click **Finish**.
  - If the printer driver does not work properly, uninstall the driver and reinstall it.  
For windows follow the steps below to uninstall the driver.
    - Make sure that the machine is connected to your computer and powered on.
    - From the **Start** menu, select **Programs** or **All Programs** > your printer driver name > **Maintenance**.
    - Select **Remove** and click **Next**.  
You will see a component list so that you can remove any item individually.
    - Select the components you want to remove and then click **Next**.
    - When your computer asks you to confirm your selection, click **Yes**.  
The selected driver and all of its components are removed from your computer.
    - After the software is removed, click **Finish**.

## Macintosh

- Make sure that the machine is connected to your network and powered on. Also, your machine's IP address should have been set.
- Insert the supplied software CD into your CD-ROM drive.
- Double-click the CD-ROM icon that appears on your Macintosh desktop.
- Double-click the **MAC\_Installer** folder.
- Double-click the **Installer** icon.
- Enter the password and click **OK**.
- The Samsung Installer window opens. Click **Continue**.
- Select **Easy Install** and click **Install**. **Easy Install** is recommended for most users. All components necessary for machine operations will be installed.  
If you select **Custom Install**, you can choose individual components to install.
- When the message which warns that all applications will close on your computer appears, click **Continue**.
- Select **Typical installation for a network print** and click **OK**.
  - The certification window appears, click **Trust**. See "IP setting using SetIP Program (Macintosh)" on page 43.
- After the installation is finished, click **Quit**.
  - If you have installed scan driver, click **Restart**.
- Open the **Applications** folder > **Utilities** > **Print Setup Utility**.
  - For Mac OS X 10.5, open the **Applications** folder > **System Preferences** and click **Print & Fax**.
- Click **Add** on the **Printer List**.
  - For Mac OS X 10.5, press the "+" icon; a display window will pop up.
- For Mac OS X 10.3, select the **IP Printing** tab.
  - For Mac OS X 10.4, click **IP Printer**.
  - For Mac OS X 10.5, click **IP**.
- Select **Socket/HP Jet Direct** in **Printer Type**.  
When printing a document containing many pages, printing performance may be enhanced by choosing Socket for **Printer Type** option.
- Enter the machine's IP address in the **Printer Address** field.
- Enter the queue name in the **Queue Name** field. If you cannot determine the queue name for your machine server, try using the default queue first.
- For Mac OS X 10.3, if Auto Select does not work properly, select **Samsung** in **Printer Model** and your machine name in **Model Name**.
  - For Mac OS X 10.4, if Auto Select does not work properly, select **Samsung** in **Print Using** and your machine name in **Model**.
  - For Mac OS X 10.5, if Auto Select does not work properly, choose **Select a driver to use...** and your machine name in **Print Using**.  
Your machine's IP address appears on the **Printer List**, and is set as the default machine.
- Click **Add**.
  - If the printer driver does not work properly, uninstall the driver and reinstall it.  
Follow steps below to uninstall the driver for Macintosh.
    - Make sure that the machine is connected to your computer and powered on.
    - Insert the supplied software CD into your CD-ROM drive.
    - Double-click CD-ROM icon that appears on your Macintosh desktop.
    - Double-click the **MAC\_Installer** folder.

- e) Double-click the **Installer** icon.
- f) Enter the password and click **OK**.
- g) The Samsung Installer window opens. Click **Continue**.
- h) Select **Uninstall** and click **Uninstall**.
- i) When the message which warns that all applications will close on your computer appears, click **Continue**.
- j) When the uninstall is done, click **Quit**.



# basic setup

After installation is complete, you may want to set the machine's default settings. Refer to the next section if you would like to set or change values. This chapter gives you step-by-step instructions for setting up the machine.

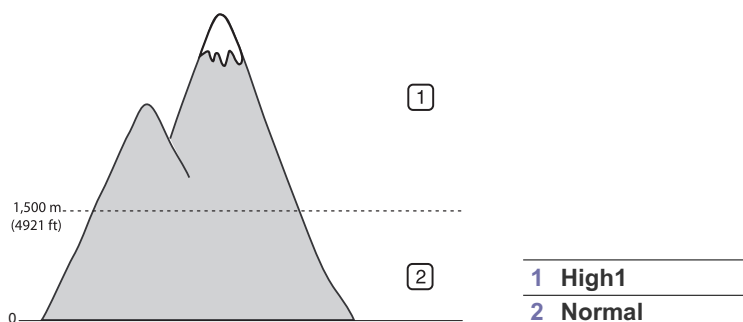
**This chapter includes:**

- Altitude adjustment
- Changing the display language
- Setting the date and time
- Changing the clock mode
- Changing the default mode
- Setting sounds
- Entering characters using the number keypad

## ALTITUDE ADJUSTMENT

The print quality is affected by atmospheric pressure, which is determined by the height of the machine above sea level. The following information will guide you on how to set your machine to the best print quality or best quality of print.

Before you set the altitude value, find the altitude where you are using the machine.



1. Ensure that you have installed the printer driver with the provided Printer Software CD.
2. Double-click the **Smart Panel** icon on the Windows task bar (or Notification Area in Linux). You can also click **Smart Panel** on the status bar in Mac OS X.
3. Click **Printer Setting**.
4. Click **Setting > Altitude Adjustment**. Select the appropriate value from the dropdown list, and then click **Apply**.

- If your machine is connected to a network, SyncThru™ Web Service screen appears automatically. Click **Machine Settings > System Setup > Machine Setup > Altitude Adj.** Select the appropriate altitude value, and then click **Apply**.
- If your machine is connected via a USB cable, set the altitude in **Altitude Adj.** option on the machine's display screen.

## CHANGING THE DISPLAY LANGUAGE


To change the language that appears on the display, follow the steps below:

- Using the save modes
- Setting the default tray and paper
- Changing the font setting
- Setting job timeout
- Auto continue
- Auto tray switch

1. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
2. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **System Setup** and press **OK**.
3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Machine Setup** and press **OK**.
4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Language** and press **OK**.
5. Press the up/down arrow to display the language you want.
6. Press **OK** to save the selection.
7. Press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.

## SETTING THE DATE AND TIME

When you set the time and date, they are used in delay fax and delay print. They are printed on reports. If, however, they are not correct, you need to change it for the correct time being.

 If the machine's power is cut off, you need to reset the correct time and date once the power has been restored.

1. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
2. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **System Setup** and press **OK**.
3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Machine Setup** and press **OK**.
4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Date & Time** and press **OK**.
5. Enter the correct time and date using up/down, left/right arrow or numeric keypad.  
Month = 01 to 12,  
Day = 01 to 31,  
Year = requires four digits,  
Hour = 01 to 12,  
Minute = 00 to 59,  
and you can also select AM or PM.
6. Press **OK** to save the selection.
7. Press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.

## CHANGING THE CLOCK MODE

You can set your machine to display the current time using either a 12-hour or 24-hour format.

1. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
2. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **System Setup** and press **OK**.

- 3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Machine Setup** and press **OK**.
- 4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Clock Mode** and press **OK**.
- 5. Press the up/down arrow to select the other mode and press **OK**.
- 6. Press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.


## CHANGING THE DEFAULT MODE

Your machine is preset to Copy mode. You can switch this default mode between Fax mode and Copy mode.

- 1. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
- 2. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **System Setup** and press **OK**.
- 3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Machine Setup** and press **OK**.
- 4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Default Mode** and press **OK**.
- 5. Press the up/down arrow to select the mode you want.
- 6. Press **OK** to save the selection.
- 7. Press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.

## SETTING SOUNDS

You can control the following sounds:

- **Key sound:** Turns the key sound **On** or **Off**. With this option set to **On**, a tone sounds each time a key is pressed.
  - **Alarm Sound:** Turns the alarm sound **On** or **Off**. With this option set to **On**, an alarm tone sounds when an error occurs or fax communication ends.
  - **Speaker:** Turns **On** or **Off** the sounds from the telephone line through the speaker, such as a dial tone or a fax tone. With this option set to **Comm.** which means “Common”, the speaker is on until the remote machine answers.
-  You can adjust the volume level using **On Hook Dial**. If your machine is SCX-5635HN, you can adjust the volume level using the handset.
- **Ringer:** Adjusts the ringer volume. For the ringer volume, you can select **Off**, **Low**, **Mid**, and **High**.

### Speaker, ringer, key sound, and alarm sound

- 1. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
- 2. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **System Setup** and press **OK**.
- 3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Sound/Volume** and press **OK**.
- 4. Press the up/down arrow until the sound option you want highlights and press **OK**.
- 5. Press the up/down arrow until the desired status or volume for the sound you have selected highlights and press **OK**.
- 6. If necessary, repeat steps 4 through 5 to set other sounds.
- 7. Press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.

### Speaker volume

To adjust the volume using **On Hook Dial**:

- 1. Press **On Hook Dial**. A dial tone sounds from the speaker.
- 2. Press the left/right arrow until you hear the volume you want.
- 3. Press **On Hook Dial** to save the change and return to ready mode.

To adjust the volume using the handset (SCX-5635HN only)

- 1. Pick up the handset. A dial tone sounds from the earpiece.
- 2. Press the left/right arrow until you hear the volume you want.
- 3. Press **OK** to save the change and replace the handset.



You can adjust the speaker volume only when the telephone line is connected.

## ENTERING CHARACTERS USING THE NUMBER KEYPAD

As you perform various tasks, you may need to enter names and numbers. For example, when you set up your machine, you enter your name or your company’s name, and the fax number. When you store fax numbers or email addresses in memory, you may also enter the corresponding names.

### Entering alphanumeric characters

- 1. When you are prompted to enter a letter, locate the button labeled with the character you want. Press the button until the correct letter appears on the display.  
For example, to enter the letter O, press 6, labeled with MNO. Each time you press 6, the display shows a different letter, M, N, O, m, n, o and finally 6.  
You can enter special characters, such as space, plus sign, and etc. For details, see the below section.
- 2. To enter additional letters, repeat step 1.  
If the next letter is printed on the same button, move the cursor by pressing the left/right arrow button and then press the button labeled with the letter you want. The cursor will move to the right and the next letter will appear on the display.  
You can enter a space by pressing 1 twice.
- 3. When you have finished entering letters, press **OK**.

### Keypad letters and numbers

| KEY | ASSIGNED NUMBERS, LETTERS, OR CHARACTERS |
|-----|------------------------------------------|
| 1   | @ / . ‘ 1                                |
| 2   | A B C a b c 2                            |
| 3   | D E F d e f 3                            |
| 4   | G H I g h i 4                            |
| 5   | J K L j k l 5                            |
| 6   | M N O m n o 6                            |
| 7   | P Q R S p q r s 7                        |
| 8   | T U V t u v 8                            |
| 9   | W X Y Z w x y z 9                        |
| 0   | & + - , 0                                |
| *   | *                                        |
| #   | #                                        |

### Correcting numbers or names

If you make a mistake while entering a number or name, press the left/right arrow button to delete the last digit or character. Then enter the correct number or character.

## Inserting a pause

With some telephone systems, you must dial an access code (9, for example) and listen for a second dial tone. In such cases, you must insert a pause in the telephone number. You can insert a pause while you are setting up speed dial numbers.

To insert a pause, press **Redial/Pause** at the appropriate place while entering the telephone number. A - appears on the display at the corresponding location.

## USING THE SAVE MODES

### Using toner saving feature

Toner save mode allows your machine to use less toner on each page. Activating this mode extends the life of the toner cartridge beyond what one would experience in the normal mode, but it reduces print quality.

1. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
2. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **System Setup** and press **OK**.
3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Machine Setup** and press **OK**.
4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Toner Save** and press **OK**.
5. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **On** and press **OK**.
6. Press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.



When PC-printing, you can also turn on or off toner save mode in the printer properties.

### Using power saving feature

When you are not using the machine for a while, use this feature to save power.

1. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
2. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **System Setup** and press **OK**.
3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Machine Setup** and press **OK**.
4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Power Save** and press **OK**.
5. Press the up/down arrow to select the time you want.
6. Press **OK** to save the selection.
7. Press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.

### Using scan power saving feature

Scan power save mode allows you to save power by turning off the scan lamp. The scan lamp under the scanner glass automatically turns off when it is not in actual use to reduce power consumption and extend the life of the lamp. The lamp automatically wakes up after some warm-up time when you start scanning.

1. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
2. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **System Setup** and press **OK**.
3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Machine Setup** and press **OK**.
4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Scan Power Save** and press **OK**.
5. Press the up/down arrow to select the time you want.
6. Press **OK** to save the selection.
7. Press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.

## SETTING THE DEFAULT TRAY AND PAPER

You can select the tray and paper you would like to keep using for printing job.

## In the control panel

### Setting the paper size

1. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
2. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **System Setup** and press **OK**.
3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Paper Setup** and press **OK**.
4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Paper Size** and press **OK**.
5. Press the up/down arrow to select the paper tray you want and press **OK**.
6. Press the up/down arrow to select the paper size you want.
7. Press **OK** to save the selection.
8. Press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.

### Setting the paper type

1. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
2. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **System Setup** and press **OK**.
3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Paper Setup** and press **OK**.
4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Paper Type** and press **OK**.
5. Press the up/down arrow to select the paper tray you want and press **OK**.
6. Press the up/down arrow to select the paper type you want.
7. Press **OK** to save the selection.
8. Press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.

### Setting the paper source

1. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
2. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **System Setup** and press **OK**.
3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Paper Setup** and press **OK**.
4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Paper Source** and press **OK**.
5. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Copy Tray** or **Fax Tray** and press **OK**.
6. Press the up/down arrow to select the paper tray you want.
7. Press **OK** to save the selection.
8. Press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.

## In the computer

### Windows

1. Click the Windows **Start** menu.
2. For Windows 2000, select **Settings > Printers**.
  - For Windows XP/2003 select **Printer and Faxes**.
  - For Windows Vista select **Control Panel > Hardware and Sound > Printers**.
3. Right-click your machine and press **Printing Preferences**.
4. Click **Paper** tab.
5. Select tray and its options, such as paper size and type.
6. Press **OK**.

### Macintosh

Macintosh does not support this function. Macintosh users need to change the default setting manually each time they want to print using other settings.

1. Open a Macintosh application and select the file you want to print.
2. Open the **File** menu and click **Print**.
3. Go to **Paper Feed** pane.
4. Set appropriate tray from which you want to print.


5. Go to **Paper** pane.
6. Set paper type to correspond to the paper loaded in the tray from which you want to print.
7. Click **Print** to print.

## CHANGING THE FONT SETTING

Your machine has preset the font for your region or country.

If you want to change the font or set the font for special condition, such as the DOS environment, you can change the font setting as follows:

1. Turn your networked computer on and open the web browser.
2. Enter your machine's IP address as the URL in a browser.
3. Click **Go** to access the SyncThru™ Web Service.
4. Click **Machine Settings**.
5. Click **Printer Setup**.
6. Click **PCL**.
7. Select your preferred font in the **Symbol Set** list.
8. Click **Apply**.

 Following information shows the proper font list for corresponding languages.

- **Russian:** CP866, ISO 8859/5 Latin Cyrillic
- **Hebrew:** Hebrew 15Q, Hebrew-8, Hebrew-7 (Israel only)
- **Greek:** ISO 8859/7 Latin Greek, PC-8 Latin/Greek
- **Arabic & Farsi:** HP Arabic-8, Windows Arabic, Code Page 864, Farsi, ISO 8859/6 Latin Arabic
- **OCR:** OCR-A, OCR-B

## SETTING JOB TIMEOUT

When there is no input for a certain period of time, the machine exits the current menu and goes in to the default settings. You can set the amount of time the machine will wait.

1. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
2. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **System Setup** and press **OK**.
3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Machine Setup** and press **OK**.
4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Job Timeout** and press **OK**.
5. Enter the time using up/down arrow or numeric keypad.
6. Press **OK** to save the selection.
7. Press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.

## AUTO CONTINUE

This is the option to set the machine to continue printing or not, in case that the paper size you have set and the paper in the tray mismatches.

1. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
2. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **System Setup** and press **OK**.
3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Machine Setup** and press **OK**.
4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Auto Continue** and press **OK**.
5. Press the up/down arrow until the setting option you want appears.
  - **On:** Automatically prints after set time passes, when the paper size mismatches the tray paper size.
  - **Off:** Waits until you press **Start** on the control panel, when the paper size mismatches the tray paper size.
6. Press **OK** to save the selection.

7. Press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.

## AUTO TRAY SWITCH

This is the option to set the machine to continue printing or not, in case that both tray1 and tray2 are filled with same size paper, the machine automatically prints from tray2 after tray1 get empty.

1. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
2. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **System Setup** and press **OK**.
3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Machine Setup** and press **OK**.
4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Auto Tray Switch** and press **OK**.
5. Press the up/down arrow until the setting option you want appears.
  - **On:** Automatically prints after tray 1 get empty.
  - **Off:** Waits until you load the paper in the tray 1.
6. Press **OK** to save the selection.
7. Press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.

# media and tray

This chapter provides information on how to load originals and print media into your machine.

## This chapter includes:

- Preparing originals
- Loading originals
- Selecting print media
- Changing the tray size
- Loading paper in the tray
- Printing on special media
- Setting the paper size and type
- selecting an output location

## PREPARING ORIGINALS

- Do not load paper smaller than 142 x 148 mm (5.6 x 5.8 inches) or larger than 216 x 356 mm (8.5 x 14 inches).
- Do not attempt to load the following types of paper, in order to prevent paper jam, low print quality and machine damage.
  - Carbon-paper or carbon-backed paper
  - Coated paper
  - Onion skin or thin paper
  - Wrinkled or creased paper
  - Curled or rolled paper
  - Torn paper
- Remove all staples and paper clips before loading.
- Make sure any glue, ink, or correction fluid on the paper is completely dry before loading.
- Do not load originals that include different sizes or weights of paper.
- Do not load booklets, pamphlets, transparencies, or documents with other unusual characteristics.

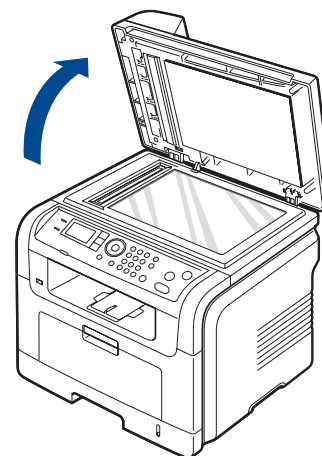
## LOADING ORIGINALS

You can use the scanner glass or the automatic document feeder to load an original for copying, scanning, and sending a fax.

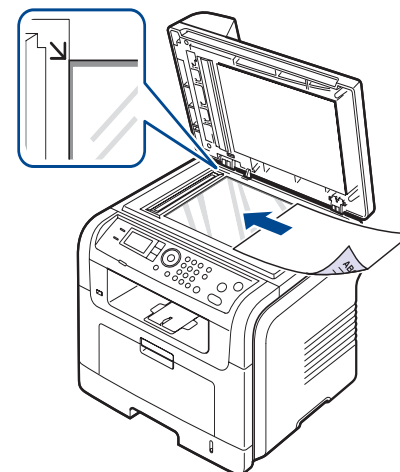
### On the scanner glass

Make sure that no originals are in the document feeder. If an original is detected in the document feeder, the machine gives it priority over the original on the scanner glass. To get the best scan quality, especially for colored or gray-scaled images, use the scanner glass.

1. Lift and open the scanner lid.



2. Place the original face down on the scanner glass. And align it with the registration guide at the top left corner of the glass.



3. Close the scanner lid.
  - Leaving the scanner lid open while copying may affect copy quality and toner consumption.
  - Dust on the scanner glass may cause black spots on the printout. Always keep it clean. (See "Cleaning the scan unit" on page 106.)
  - If you are copying a page from a book or magazine, lift the scanner lid until its hinges are caught by the stopper and then



close the lid. If the book or magazine is thicker than 30 mm, start copying with the lid open.

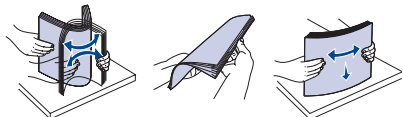


- Be careful not to break the scanner glass. You may get hurt.
- Do not put hands while closing the scanner lid. The scanner lid may fall on your hands and get hurt.
- Do not look the light from inside of the scanner while copying or scanning. It is harmful to eyes.

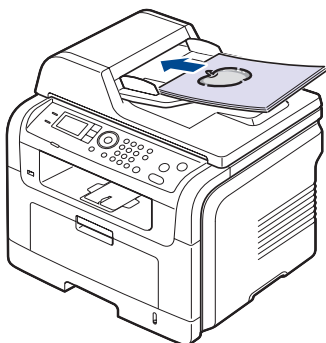
## In the document feeder

Using the document feeder, you can load up to 50 sheets of paper (80 g/m<sup>2</sup>, 20 lb bond) for one job.

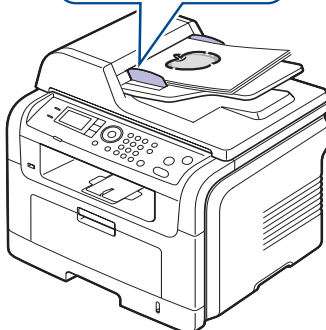
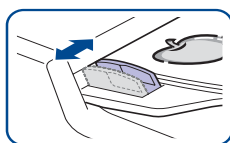
1. Flex or fan the edge of the paper stack to separate the pages before loading originals.



2. Load the original face up into the document feeder. Make sure that the bottom of the original stack matches the paper size marked on the document input tray.



3. Adjust the document width guides to the paper size.



Dust on the document feeder glass may cause black lines on the printout. Always keep the glass clean. (See "Cleaning the scan unit" on page 106.)

## SELECTING PRINT MEDIA

You can print on a variety of print media, such as plain paper, envelopes, labels, and transparencies. Always use print media that meet the guidelines for use with your machine.

### Guidelines to select the print media

Print media that does not meet the guidelines outlined in this user's guide may cause the following problems:

- Poor print quality
- Increased paper jams
- Premature wear on the machine.

Properties, such as weight, composition, grain, and moisture content, are important factors that affect the machine's performance and the output quality. When you choose print materials, consider the following:

- The type, size and weight of the print media for your machine are described in print media specifications. (See "Print media specifications" on page 133.)
- Desired outcome: The print media you choose should be appropriate for your project.
- Brightness: Some print media are whiter than others and produce sharper, more vibrant images.
- Surface smoothness: The smoothness of the print media affects how crisp the printing looks on the paper.
- Some print media may meet all of the guidelines in this section and still not produce satisfactory results. This may be the result of improper handling, unacceptable temperature and humidity levels, or other variables over which cannot be controlled.
- Before purchasing large quantities of print media, ensure that it meets the requirements specified in this user's guide.



Using print media that does not meet these specifications may cause problems, requiring repairs. Such repairs are not covered by the warranty or service agreements.

The amount of paper put into the tray may differ according to media type used. (See "Print media specifications" on page 133.)

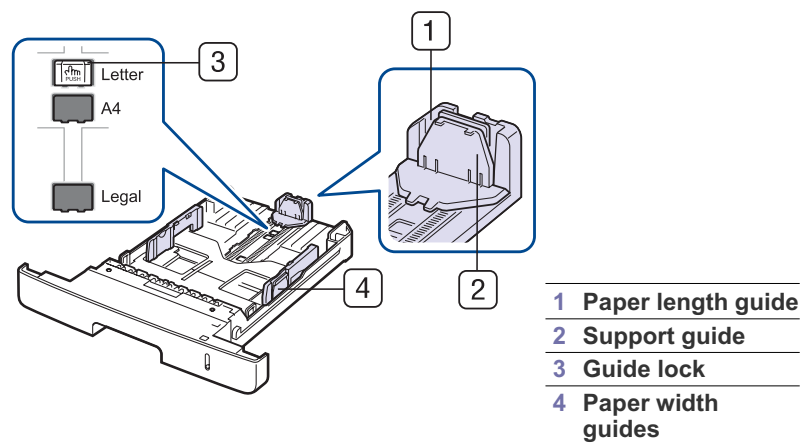
### Media sizes supported in each mode

| MODE                         | SIZE                                                                | SOURCE                                                                                                              |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Copy mode                    | Letter, A4, Legal, Oficio, Folio, Executive, ISO B5, JIS B5, A5, A6 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• tray 1</li> <li>• optional tray 2</li> <li>• multi-purpose tray</li> </ul> |
| Print mode                   | All sizes supported by the machine.                                 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• tray 1</li> <li>• optional tray 2</li> <li>• multi-purpose tray</li> </ul> |
| Fax mode                     | Letter, A4, Legal                                                   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• tray 1</li> <li>• optional tray 2</li> </ul>                               |
| Duplex printing <sup>a</sup> | Letter, A4, Legal, Folio, Oficio                                    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• tray 1</li> <li>• optional tray 2</li> <li>• multi-purpose tray</li> </ul> |

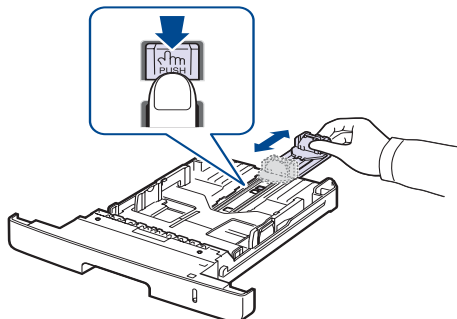
a. 75 to 90 g/m<sup>2</sup> (20~24 lb bond) only

# CHANGING THE TRAY SIZE

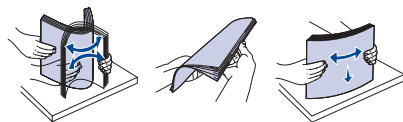
The tray is preset to Letter or A4 size, depending on your country. To change the size, you need to adjust the paper guides.



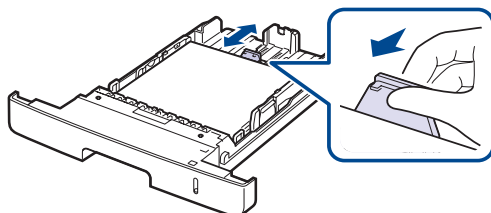
1. Press and hold the guide lock, and slide the paper length guide to locate it in the correct paper size slot.



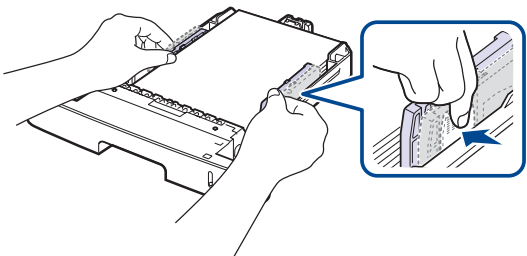
2. Flex or fan the edge of the paper stack to separate the pages before loading originals.



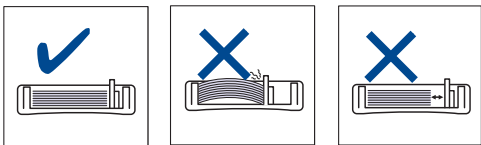
3. After inserting paper into the tray, adjust the support guide so that it lightly touches the paper stack.



4. Squeeze the paper width guides, as shown and slide them to the stack of paper until it lightly touches the side of the stack.



- Do not push the paper width guide too far causing the media to warp.
- If you do not adjust the paper width guide, it may cause paper jams.



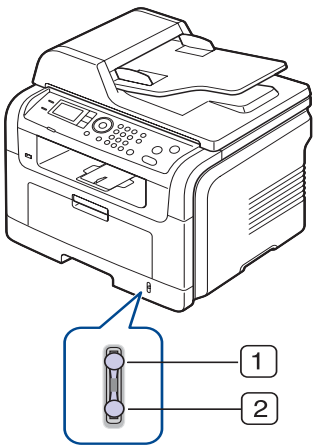
# LOADING PAPER IN THE TRAY

## Tray 1 / optional tray

Load the print media you use for the majority of your print jobs into tray 1. Tray 1 can hold a maximum of 250 sheets of plain paper.

You can purchase an optional tray and attach it below the standard tray to load an additional 250 sheets of plain paper. (See "Available accessories" on page 124.)

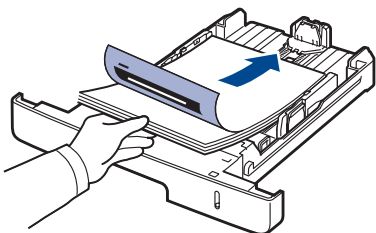
The paper level indicator on the front of the tray 1 and the optional tray 2 shows the amount of paper currently left in the tray. When the tray is empty, the indicator of the bar is completely lowered.



- 1 Full  
2 Empty

- Using photographic paper or coated paper may cause problems, requiring repairs. Such repairs are not covered by the warranty or service agreements.

1. Pull out tray. And adjust the tray size to the media size you are loading.  
(See "Changing the tray size" on page 55.)



2. When you print a document, set the paper type and size for the tray.  
For information about setting the paper type and size on the control panel. (See "Setting the paper size and type" on page 59.)



- If you experience problems with paper feeding, check whether the paper meets the media specification. Then, try placing one sheet at a time in the multi-purpose tray. (See "Print media specifications" on page 133.)
- The settings made from the machine driver override the settings on the control panel.
  - a) To print in application, open an application and start the print menu.
  - b) Open **Printing Preferences**. (See "Opening printing preferences" on page 61.)
  - c) Press the **Paper** tab in **Printing Preferences**, and select an appropriate paper type.  
For example, if you want to use a label, set the paper type to **Label**.
  - d) Select tray in paper source, then press **OK**.
  - e) Start printing in application.

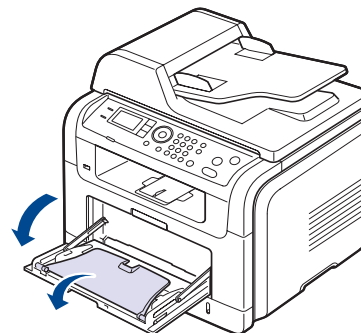
## Multi-purpose tray

The multi-purpose tray can hold special sizes and types of print material, such as postcards, note cards, and envelopes. It is useful for single page printing on colored paper.

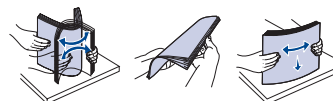
### Tips on using the multi-purpose tray

- Load only one type, size and weight of print media at a time in the multi-purpose tray.
- To prevent paper jams, do not add paper while printing when there is still paper in the multi-purpose tray. This also applies to other types of print media.
- Print media should be loaded face up with the top edge going into the multi-purpose tray first and be placed in the center of the tray.
- Always load the specified print media only to avoid paper jams and print quality problems. (See "Print media specifications" on page 133.)
- Flatten any curl on postcards, envelopes, and labels before loading them into the multi-purpose tray.

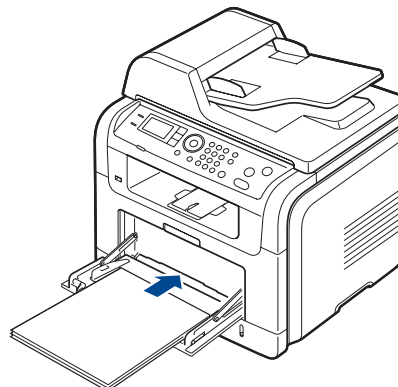
1. Open the multi-purpose tray and unfold the multi-purpose tray extension, as shown.



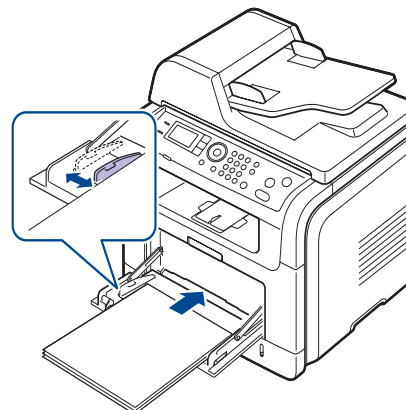
2. Flex or fan the edge of the paper stack to separate the pages before loading originals.



3. Load the paper with the side to be printed on facing up.



4. Squeeze the multi-purpose tray paper width guides and adjust them to the width of the paper. Do not force too much, or the paper will be bent, which will result in a paper jam or skew.



- When printing the special media, you must follow the loading guideline. (See "Printing on special media" on page 57.)
- When papers overlap when printing using Multi-purpose tray, open tray 1 and remove overlapping papers then try printing again.



- When paper does not feed well while printing, push the paper in manually until it starts feeding automatically.
5. When you print a document, set the paper type and size for the multi-purpose tray.  
For information about setting the paper type and size on the control panel. (See "Setting the paper size and type" on page 59.)



The settings made from the machine driver override the settings on the control panel.

- To print in application, open an application and start the print menu.
- Open **Printing Preferences**. (See "Opening printing preferences" on page 61.)
- Press the **Paper** tab in **Printing Preferences**, and select an appropriate paper type.  
For example, if you want to use a label, set the paper type to **Label**.
- Select **Manual Feeder** in paper source, then press **OK**.
- Start printing in application.
- After printing, close the multi-purpose tray.

## PRINTING ON SPECIAL MEDIA

The table below shows the available special media for each tray.



When using special media, we recommend you feed one paper at a time. Check the maximum input number of media for each tray. (See "Print media specifications" on page 133.)

| TYPES        | TRAY 1 | OPTIONAL TRAY | MULTI-PURPOSE TRAY |
|--------------|--------|---------------|--------------------|
| Thick        | O      | O             | O                  |
| Thin         | O      | O             | O                  |
| Cotton       | X      | X             | O                  |
| Color        | X      | X             | O                  |
| Preprinted   | X      | X             | O                  |
| Recycled     | O      | O             | O                  |
| Envelope     | X      | X             | O                  |
| Transparency | X      | X             | O                  |
| Labels       | X      | X             | O                  |
| CardStock    | X      | X             | O                  |
| Bond         | X      | X             | O                  |
| Archive      | O      | O             | O                  |

The media types are shown in the **Printing Preferences**. This paper type option allows you to set the type of paper to be loaded in the tray. This setting appears in the list, so that you can select it. This will let you get the best quality printout. If not, the desired print quality may not be achieved.

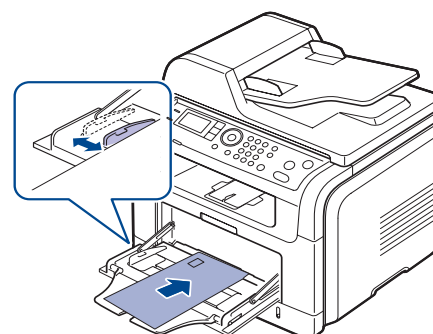
- **Plain:** Normal plain paper. Select this type if your machine is monochrome and printing on the 60 g/m<sup>2</sup> (16 lb) cotton paper.
- **Thick:** 90 to 105 g/m<sup>2</sup> (24 to 28 lb) thick paper.
- **Thin:** 60 to 70 g/m<sup>2</sup> (16 to 19 lb) thin paper.
- **Cotton:** 75 to 90 g/m<sup>2</sup> (20 to 24 lb) cotton paper.

- **Color:** 75 to 90 g/m<sup>2</sup> (20 to 24 lb) color-backgroundd paper.
- **Preprinted:** 75 to 90 g/m<sup>2</sup> (20 to 24 lb) preprinted paper.
- **Recycled:** 60 to 90 g/m<sup>2</sup> (16 to 24 lb) recycled paper.
- **Envelope:** 75 to 90 g/m<sup>2</sup> (20 to 24 lb) envelope.
- **Transparency:** 138 to 146 g/m<sup>2</sup> (37 to 39 lb) transparency paper.
- **Labels:** 120 to 150 g/m<sup>2</sup> (32 to 40 lb) label.
- **CardStock:** 105 to 163 g/m<sup>2</sup> (28 to 43 lb) cardstock.
- **Bond:** 105 to 120 g/m<sup>2</sup> (28 to 32 lb) bond.
- **Archive:** 70 to 90 g/m<sup>2</sup> (19 to 24 lb) If you need to keep the print-out for a long period time, such as archives, select this option.

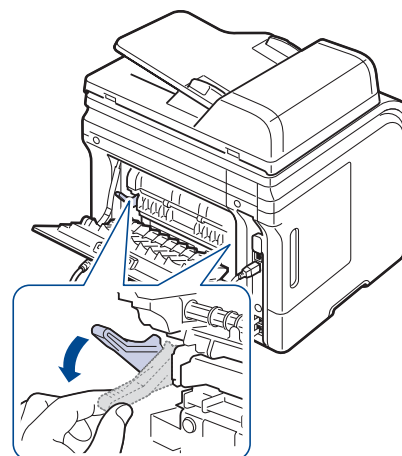
## Envelope

Successful printing on envelopes depends upon the quality of the envelopes.

To print an envelope, place it flap side down with the stamp area on the top left side.

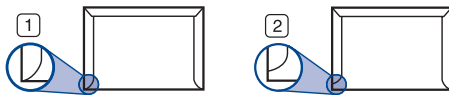


If you need to do the printing job with a wrinkled envelopes, open the rear door. Then pull down the pressure levers on each side.



- When selecting envelopes, consider the following factors:
  - **Weight:** The weight of the envelope paper should not exceed 90 g/m<sup>2</sup> otherwise, jam may occur.
  - **Construction:** Prior to printing, envelopes should lie flat with less than 6 mm curl, and should not contain air.
  - **Condition:** Envelopes should not be wrinkled, nicked, either damaged.
  - **Temperature:** Use envelopes that are compatible with the heat and pressure of the machine during operation.
- Use only well-constructed envelopes with sharp-and well-creased folds.
- Do not use stamped envelopes.

- Do not use envelopes with clasps, snaps, windows, coated lining, self-adhesive seals, or other synthetic materials.
- Do not use damaged or poorly made envelopes.
- Be sure the seam at both ends of the envelope extends all the way to the corner of the envelope.

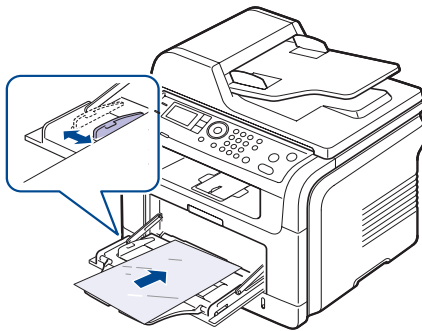


- 1 Acceptable
- 2 Unacceptable

- Envelopes with a peel-off adhesive strip or with more than one flap that folds over to seal must use adhesives compatible with the machine's fusing temperature for 0.1 second. To view the fusing temperature, check your machine's specification. (See "General specifications" on page 129.) The extra flaps and strips might cause wrinkling, creasing, or jams, and may even damage the fuser.
- For the best print quality, position margins no closer than 15 mm from the edges of the envelope.
- Avoid printing over the area where the envelope's seams meet.

## Transparency

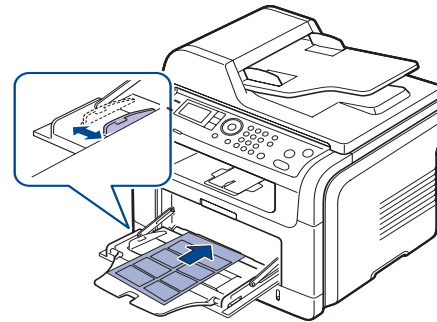
To avoid damaging the machine, use only transparencies designed for use in laser printers.



- Transparencies used in the machine must be able to withstand machine's fusing temperature.
- Place them on a flat surface after removing them from the machine.
- Do not leave unused transparencies in the paper tray for long periods of time. Dust and dirt may accumulate on them, resulting in spotty printing.
- To avoid smudging caused by fingerprints, handle them carefully.
- To avoid fading, do not expose printed transparencies to prolonged sunlight.
- Ensure that transparencies are not wrinkled, curled, or have any torn edges.
- Do not use transparencies that separates from the backing sheet.
- To prevent transparencies from sticking to each other, do not let the printed sheets stack up as they are begin printed out.
- Recommended media: Transparency for a color laser printer by Xerox, such as 3R 91331(A4), 3R 2780(Letter)

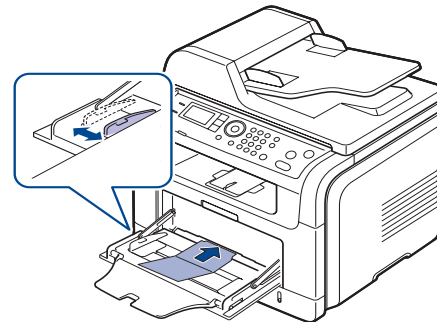
## Labels

To avoid damaging the machine, use only labels designed for use in laser machines.



- When selecting labels, consider the following factors:
  - **Adhesives:** The adhesive material should be stable at your machine's fusing temperature. Check your machine's specification to view the fusing temperature. (See "General specifications" on page 129.)
  - **Arrangement:** Only use labels with no exposed backing between them. Labels can peel off sheets that have spaces between the labels, causing serious jams.
  - **Curl:** Prior to printing, labels must lie flat with no more than 13 mm of curl in any direction.
  - **Condition:** Do not use labels with wrinkles, bubbles, or other indications of separation.
- Make sure that there is no exposed adhesive material between labels. Exposed areas can cause labels to peel off during printing, which can cause paper jams. Exposed adhesive can also cause damage to machine components.
- Do not run a sheet of labels through the machine more than once. The adhesive backing is designed for only a single pass through the machine.
- Do not use labels that are separating from the backing sheet or are wrinkled, bubbled, or otherwise damaged.

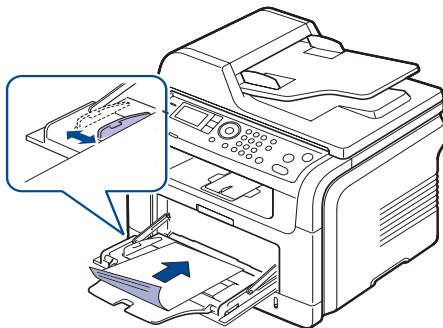
## Card stock/ Custom-sized paper



- Do not print on media smaller than 76.2 mm (3 inches) wide or 127 mm (5 inches) long.
- In the software application, set margins at least 6.4 mm (0.25 inches) away from the edges of the material.

## Preprinted paper


When loading preprinted paper, printed side should be facing down with an uncurled edge at the front. If you experience problems with paper feed, turn the paper around. Note that print quality is not guaranteed.



- Preprinted paper must be printed with heat-resistant ink that will not melt, vaporize, or release hazardous emissions when subjected to the machine's fusing temperature for 0.1 second. Check your machine's specification to view the fusing temperature. (See "General specifications" on page 129.)
- Preprinted paper ink must be non-flammable and should not adversely affect machine rollers.
- Forms should be sealed in a moisture-proof wrapping to prevent changes during storage.
- Before you load preprinted paper, verify that the ink on the paper is dry. During the fusing process, wet ink can come off preprinted paper, reducing print quality.


## SETTING THE PAPER SIZE AND TYPE

After loading paper in the paper tray, set the paper size and type using the control panel. These settings will apply to copy and fax modes. For computer printing, select the paper size and type in the application program you use on your computer. (See "Opening printing preferences" on page 61.)

-  The settings made from the machine driver override the settings on the control panel.

### Setting the paper size

1. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
2. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **System Setup** and press **OK**.
3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Paper Setup** and press **OK**.
4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Paper Size** and press **OK**.
5. Press the up/down arrow to select the paper tray you want and press **OK**.
6. Press the up/down arrow to select the paper size you want.
7. Press **OK** to save the selection.
8. Press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.

-  If you want to use special-sized paper-such as a billing paper, select **Custom** in the **Paper** tab in the **Printing Preferences**. (See "Opening printing preferences" on page 61.)

### Setting the paper type


1. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
2. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **System Setup** and press **OK**.
3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Paper Setup** and press **OK**.

4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Paper Type** and press **OK**.
5. Press the up/down arrow to select the paper tray you want and press **OK**.
6. Press the up/down arrow to select the paper type you want.
7. Press **OK** to save the selection.
8. Press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.

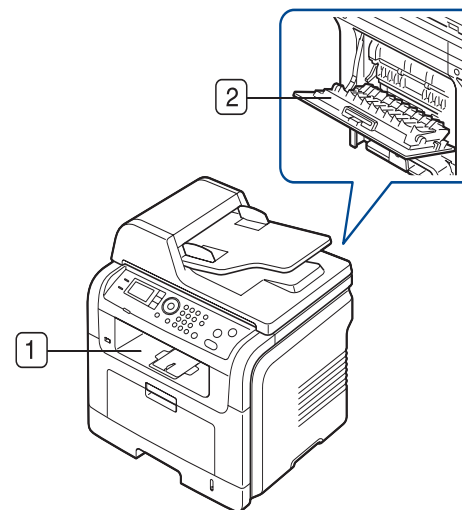
## Setting the paper source

1. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
2. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **System Setup** and press **OK**.
3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Paper Setup** and press **OK**.
4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Paper Source** and press **OK**.
5. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Copy Tray** or **Fax Tray** and press **OK**.
6. Press the up/down arrow to select the paper tray you want.
7. Press **OK** to save the selection.
8. Press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.

## SELECTING AN OUTPUT LOCATION


-  The surface of the output tray may become hot if you print a large number of pages at once. Make sure that you do not touch the surface, and do not allow children near it.

The machine has two output locations: the rear door (face up) and the output tray (face down).



- |   |             |
|---|-------------|
| 1 | Output tray |
| 2 | Rear door   |

The machine sends output to the output tray by default. To use the output tray, make sure that the rear door is closed.

-  • If paper coming out of the output tray has problems, such as excessive curl, try printing to the rear door.
- To avoid paper jams, do not open or close the rear door while the machine is printing.


## Printing to the output tray

The output tray collects printed paper face down, in the order in which the sheets were printed. The tray should be used for most print jobs.

This chapter explains common printing tasks.

**This chapter includes:**

- Printer driver features
- Basic printing
- Opening printing preferences
- Using help
- Using special print features
- Changing the default print settings


 The procedures in this chapter are mainly based on Windows XP.

**PRINTER DRIVER FEATURES**

Your printer drivers support the following standard features:

- Paper orientation, size, source, and media type selection
- Number of copies

In addition, you can use various special printing features. The following table shows a general overview of features supported by your printer drivers:

 Some models or operating system may not support the certain feature(s) in the following table.

**PCL Printer driver**

| FEATURE                         | WINDOWS |
|---------------------------------|---------|
| Machine quality option          | O       |
| Booklet printing                | O       |
| Poster printing                 | O       |
| Multiple pages per sheet        | O       |
| Fit to page printing            | O       |
| Reduce and enlarge printing     | O       |
| Different source for first page | O       |
| Watermark                       | O       |
| Overlay                         | O       |
| Double-sided printing (duplex)  | O       |

**PostScript Printer driver**

| FEATURE                  | WINDOWS | LINUX       | MACINTOSH |
|--------------------------|---------|-------------|-----------|
| Machine quality option   | O       | O           | O         |
| Poster printing          | X       | X           | X         |
| Multiple pages per sheet | O       | O<br>(2, 4) | O         |
| Fit to page printing     | O       | O           | O         |






- Setting your machine as a default machine
- Printing to a file (PRN)
- Macintosh printing
- Linux printing
- Printing with PS driver

| FEATURE                                     | WINDOWS | LINUX | MACINTOSH |
|---------------------------------------------|---------|-------|-----------|
| Reduce and enlarge printing                 | O       | X     | O         |
| Different source for first page             | X       | X     | O         |
| Watermark                                   | X       | X     | X         |
| Overlay                                     | X       | X     | X         |
| Double-sided printing (duplex) <sup>a</sup> | O       | O     | O         |


a. The machine with Duplex feature prints both side of a paper.

**BASIC PRINTING**

Your machine allows you to print from various Windows, Macintosh, or Linux applications. The exact steps for printing a document may vary depending on the application you use.

-  • Your **Printing Preferences** window that appears in this user's guide may differ depending on the machine in use. However, the composition of the **Printing Preferences** window is similar. Check the operating system(s) that are compatible with your machine. Refer to the OS compatibility section of Printer Specifications . (See "Printer specifications" on page 130.)
- When you select an option in **Printing Preferences**, you may see a warning mark,  , or  . An exclamation mark (  ) means you can select that certain option but it is not recommended, and (  ) mark means you cannot select that option due to the machine's setting or environment.

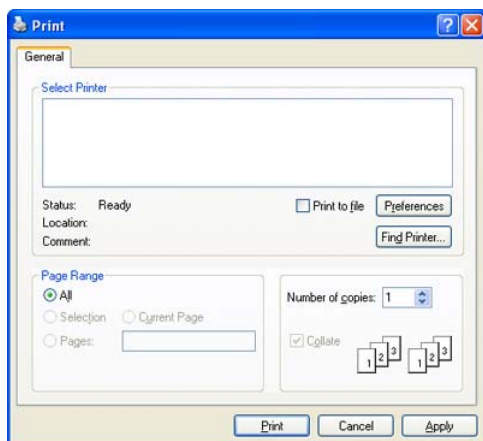
The following procedure describes the general steps required for printing from various Windows applications.

-  Macintosh basic printing. (See "Macintosh printing" on page 65.)
- Linux basic printing. (See "Linux printing" on page 67.)

The following **Printing Preferences** window is for Notepad in Windows XP. Your **Printing Preferences** window may differ, depending on your operating system or the application you are using.

1. Open the document you want to print.
2. Select **Print** from the **File** menu. The **Print** window appears.

3. Select your machine from the **Select Printer** list.



The basic print settings including the number of copies and print range are selected within the **Print** window.

To take advantage of the printer features provided by your printer driver, click **Properties** or **Preferences** in the application's **Print** window to change the print setting. (See "Opening printing preferences" on page 61. )

4. To start the print job, click **OK** or **Print** in the **Print** window.

## Canceling a print job

If the print job is waiting in a print queue or print spooler, cancel the job as follows:

1. Click the Windows **Start** menu.
  - For Windows 2000, select **Settings > Printers**.
  - For Windows XP/2003, select **Printers and Faxes**.
  - For Windows Vista, select **Control Panel > Hardware and Sound > Printers**.
2. Double-click your machine.
3. From the **Document** menu, select **Cancel**.

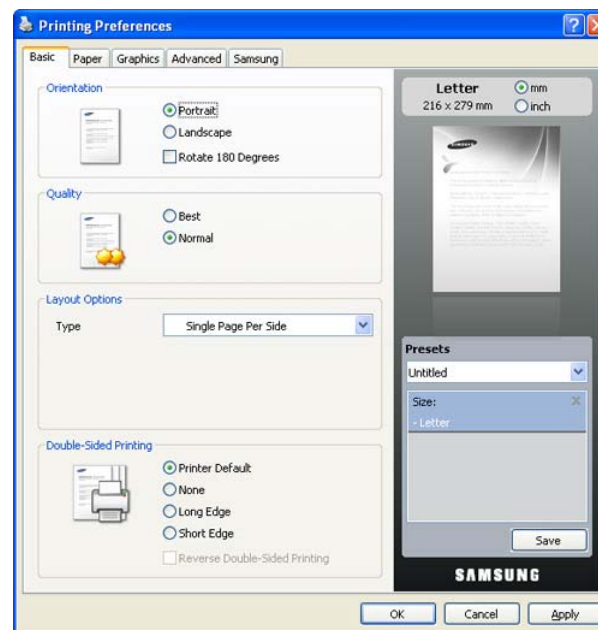
You can also access this window by simply double-clicking the machine icon ( ) in the Windows task bar. You can also cancel the current job by pressing **Stop** on the control panel.

## OPENING PRINTING PREFERENCES

You can preview the settings you selected on the upper right of the **Printing Preferences**.

1. Open the document you want to print.
2. Select **Print** from the file menu. The **Print** window appears.
3. Select your machine from the **Select Printer**.

4. Click **Properties** or **Preferences**.

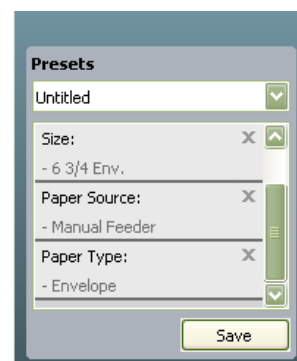


## Using a favorite setting

The **Presets** option, which is visible on each preferences tab except for **Samsung** tab, allows you to save the current preferences settings for future use.

To save a **Presets** item:

1. Change the settings as needed on each tab.
2. Enter a name for the item in the **Presets** input box. Click **Save**.



3. Click **Save**. When you save **Presets**, all current driver settings are saved.

To use a saved setting, select it from the **Presets** drop down list. The machine is now set to print according to the setting you selected.

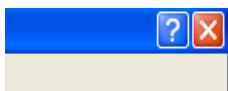
To delete a saved setting, select it from the **Presets** drop down list and click **Delete**.

You can also restore the printer driver's default settings by selecting **Default Preset** from the **Presets** drop down list.



## USING HELP

Click the question mark from the upper-right corner of the window and click on any option you want to know about. Then a pop up window appears with information about that option's feature which is provided from the driver.



If you want to search information via a keyword, click the **Samsung** tab in the **Printing Preferences** window, and enter a keyword in the input line of the **Help** option. To get information about supplies, driver update or registration and so on, click appropriate buttons.

## USING SPECIAL PRINT FEATURES

Special print features include:

- "Printing multiple pages on one sheet of paper" on page 62.
- "Printing posters" on page 62.
- "Printing booklets" on page 62.
- "Printing on both sides of paper" on page 62.
- "Change percentage of your document" on page 63.
- "Fitting your document to a selected paper size" on page 63.
- "Using watermarks" on page 63.
- "Using overlay" on page 64.

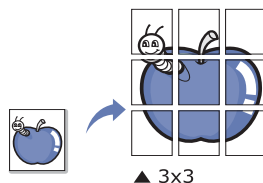
### Printing multiple pages on one sheet of paper

You can select the number of pages to print on a single sheet of paper. To print more than one page per sheet, the pages will be reduced in size and arranged in the order you specify. You can print up to 16 pages on one sheet.

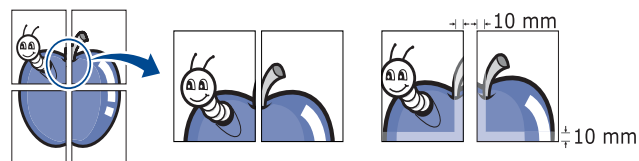
1. To change the print settings from your software application, access **Printing Preferences**. (See "Opening printing preferences" on page 61.)
2. Click the **Basic** tab, select **Multiple Pages per Side** in the **Type** drop-down list.
3. Select the number of pages you want to print per sheet (2, 4, 6, 9, or 16) in the **Pages per Side** drop-down list.
4. Select the page order from the **Page Order** drop-down list, if necessary.
5. Check **Print Page Border** to print a border around each page on the sheet.
6. Click the **Paper** tab, select the **Size**, **Source**, and **Type**.
7. Click **OK** or **Print** until you exit the **Print** window.

### Printing posters

This feature allows you to print a single-page document onto 4, 9, or 16 sheets of paper, for the purpose of pasting the sheets together to form one poster-size document.



1. To change the print settings from your software application, access **Printing Preferences**. (See "Opening printing preferences" on page 61.)
2. Click the **Basic** tab, select **Poster Printing** in the **Type** drop-down list.
3. Select the page layout you want.  
Specification of the page layout:
  - **Poster 2x2**: Document will be enlarged and be divided into 4 pages.
  - **Poster 3x3**: Document will be enlarged and be divided into 9 pages.
  - **Poster 4x4**: Document will be enlarged and be divided into 16 pages.
4. Select the **Poster Overlap** value. Specify **Poster Overlap** in millimeters or inches by selecting the radio button on the upper right of **Basic** tab to make it easier to paste the sheets together.



5. Click the **Paper** tab, select the **Size**, **Source**, and **Type**.
6. Click **OK** or **Print** until you exit the **Print** window.
7. You can complete the poster by pasting the sheets together.




### Printing booklets

This feature prints your document on both sides of a paper and arranges the pages so that the paper can be folded in half after printing to produce a booklet.



If you want to make a booklet, you need to print on Letter, Legal, A4, Us Folio, or Oficio sized print media.



1. To change the print settings from your software application, access the **Printing Preferences**. (See "Opening printing preferences" on page 61.)
2. Click the **Basic** tab, select **Booklet Printing** from the **Type** drop-down list.
3. Click the **Paper** tab, select the **Size**, **Source**, and **Type**.  
 The **Booklet Printing** option is not available for all paper sizes. In order to find out the available paper size for this feature, select the available paper size in the **Size** option on the **Paper** tab.  
If you select an unavailable paper size, this option can be automatically canceled. Select only available paper. (paper without  or  mark).
4. Click **OK** or **Print** until you exit the **Print** window.
5. After printing, fold and staple the pages.

### Printing on both sides of paper

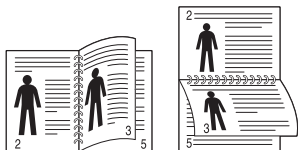
You can print on both sides of a paper; duplex. Before printing, decide how you want your document oriented. You can only use this feature with Letter, Legal, A4, US Folio, or Oficio sized paper.



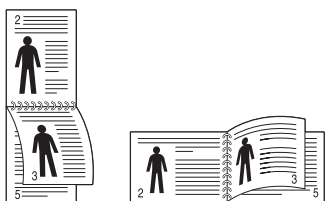
Do not print on both sides of the special media, such as labels,

envelopes, or thick paper to print on both sides of paper. It may cause a paper jam or damage the machine.

1. To change the print settings from your software application, access **Printing Preferences**. (See "Opening printing preferences" on page 61.)
2. Click the **Basic** tab.
3. From the **Double-sided Printing** section, select the binding option you want.
  - **Printer Default:** If you select this option, this feature is determined by the setting you've made on the control panel of the machine.
  - **None**
  - **Long Edge:** This option is the conventional layout used in bookbinding.



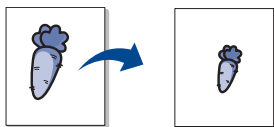
- **Short Edge:** This option is the conventional layout used in calendars.



- **Reverse Double-Sided Printing:** Check this option to reverse the print order when duplex printing.
4. Click the **Paper** tab, select the **Size**, **Source**, and **Type**.
  5. Click **OK** or **Print** until you exit the **Print** window.

## Change percentage of your document

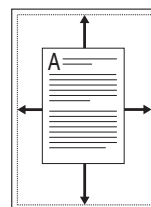
You can change the size of a document to appear larger or smaller on the printed page by typing in a percentage you want.



1. To change the print settings from your software application, access **Printing Preferences**. (See "Opening printing preferences" on page 61.)
2. Click the **Paper** tab.
3. Enter the scaling rate in the **Percentage** input box.  
You can also click the up/down arrows to select the scaling rate.
4. Select the **Size**, **Source**, and **Type** in **Paper Options**.
5. Click **OK** or **Print** until you exit the **Print** window.

## Fitting your document to a selected paper size

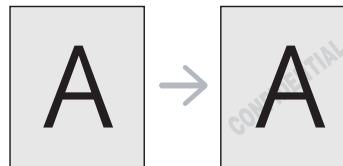
This printer feature allows you to scale your print job to any selected paper size regardless of the document size. This can be useful when you want to check fine details on a small document.



1. To change the print settings from your software application, access **Printing Preferences**. (See "Opening printing preferences" on page 61.)
2. Click the **Paper** tab.
3. Select the paper size you want from the **Fit to page**.
4. Select the **Size**, **Source**, and **Type** in **Paper Options**.
5. Click **OK** or **Print** until you exit the **Print** window.

## Using watermarks

The watermark option allows you to print text over an existing document. For example, you use it when you want to have large gray letters reading "DRAFT" or "CONFIDENTIAL" printed diagonally across the first page or all pages of a document.



There are several predefined watermarks that come with the machine. They can be modified, or you can add new ones to the list.

### Using an existing watermark

1. To change the print settings from your software application, access **Printing Preferences**. (See "Opening printing preferences" on page 61.)
2. Click the **Advanced** tab, and select the desired watermark from the **Watermark** drop-down list. You will see the selected watermark in the preview image.
3. Click **OK** or **Print** until you exit the print window.

### Creating a watermark

1. To change the print settings from your software application, access **Printing Preferences**. (See "Opening printing preferences" on page 61.)
2. From the **Advanced** tab, select **Edit** from the **Watermark** drop-down list. The **Edit Watermarks** window appears.
3. Enter a text message in the **Watermark Message** box. You can enter up to 256 characters. The message displays in the preview window.

When the **First Page Only** box is checked, the watermark prints on the first page only.

4. Select watermark options.

You can select the font name, style, size, and shade from the **Font Attributes** section, as well as set the angle of the watermark from the **Message Angle** section.

5. Click **Add** to add a new watermark to the **Current Watermarks** list.
6. When you have finished editing, click **OK** or **Print** until you exit the **Print** window.

To stop printing the watermark, select **None** from the **Watermark** drop-down list.

### Editing a watermark

1. To change the print settings from your software application, access **Printing Preferences**. (See "Opening printing preferences" on page 61.)
2. Click the **Advanced** tab, select **Edit** from the **Watermark** drop-down list. The **Edit Watermarks** window appears.
3. Select the watermark you want to edit from the **Current Watermarks** list and change the watermark message and options.
4. Click **Update** to save the changes.
5. Click **OK** or **Print** until you exit the **Print** window.

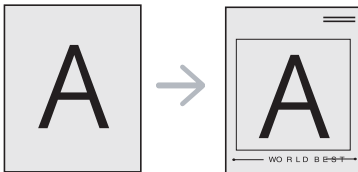
### Deleting a watermark

1. To change the print settings from your software application, access **Printing Preferences**. (See "Opening printing preferences" on page 61.)
2. Click the **Advanced** tab, select **Edit** from the **Watermark** drop-down list. The **Edit Watermarks** window appears.
3. Select the watermark you want to delete from the **Current Watermarks** list and click **Delete**.
4. Click **OK** or **Print** until you exit the **Print** window.

## Using overlay

### What is an overlay?

An overlay is text and/or images stored in the computer hard disk drive (HDD) as a special file format that can be printed on any document. Overlays are often used to take the place of letterhead paper. Rather than using preprinted letterhead, you can create an overlay containing exactly the same information that is currently on your letterhead. To print a letter with your company's letterhead, you do not need to load preprinted letterhead paper in the machine just print the letterhead overlay on your document.



### Creating a new page overlay

To use a page overlay, you must create a new page overlay containing your logo or image.

1. Create or open a document containing text or an image for use in a new page overlay. Position the items exactly as you wish them to appear when printed as an overlay.
2. To save the document as an overlay, access **Printing Preferences**. (See "Opening printing preferences" on page 61.)
3. Click the **Advanced** tab, and select **Edit** from the **Text** drop-down list. **Edit Overlay** window appears.
4. In the **Edit Overlay** window, click **Create**.
5. In the **Save As** window, type a name of up to eight characters in the **File name** box. Select the destination path, if necessary. (The default is C:\Formover.)

6. Click **Save**. The name appears on the **Overlay List**.
7. Click **OK** or **Print** until you exit the **Print** window.
8. The file is not printed. Instead, it is stored on your computer hard disk drive.



The overlay document size must be the same as the document you print with the overlay. Do not create an overlay with a watermark.

### Using a page overlay

After an overlay has been created, it is ready to be printed with your document. To print an overlay with a document:

1. Create or open the document you want to print.
2. To change the print settings from your software application, access **Printing Preferences**. (See "Opening printing preferences" on page 61.)
3. Click the **Advanced** tab.
4. Select the desired overlay from the **Text** drop-down list.
5. If the overlay file you want does not appear in the **Text** drop-down list, select **Edit** from the list and click **Load**. Select the overlay file you want to use.

If you have stored the overlay file you want to use in an external source, you can also load the file when you access the **Load Overlay** window.

After you select the file, click **Open**. The file appears in the **Overlay List** box and is available for printing. Select the overlay from the **Overlay List** box.

6. If necessary, check **Confirm Page Overlay When Printing** box. If this box is checked, a message window appears each time you submit a document for printing, asking you to confirm your wish to print an overlay on your document.

If this box is not checked and an overlay has been selected, the overlay automatically prints with your document.

7. Click **OK** or **Print** until you exit the **Print** window. The selected overlay prints on your document.



The resolution of the overlay document must be the same as that of the document you will print with the overlay.

### Deleting a page overlay

You can delete page overlays that you no longer use.


1. In the **Printing Preferences** window, click the **Advanced** tab.
2. Select **Edit** in the **Overlay** drop down list.
3. Select the overlay you want to delete from the **Overlay List** box.
4. Click **Delete**.
5. When a confirming message window appears, click **Yes**.
6. Click **OK** or **Print** until you exit the **Print** window.

## CHANGING THE DEFAULT PRINT SETTINGS

1. Click the Windows **Start** menu.
  - For Windows 2000, select **Settings > Printers**.
  - For Windows XP/2003, select **Printers and Faxes**.
  - For Windows Vista/2008, select **Control Panel > Hardware and Sound > Printers**.
2. Select your machine.
3. Right-click on the machine driver icon and select **Printing Preferences**.
4. Change the settings on each tab.



5. Click **OK**.

 If you want to change the settings for each print job, change it in **Printing Preferences**.

## SETTING YOUR MACHINE AS A DEFAULT MACHINE

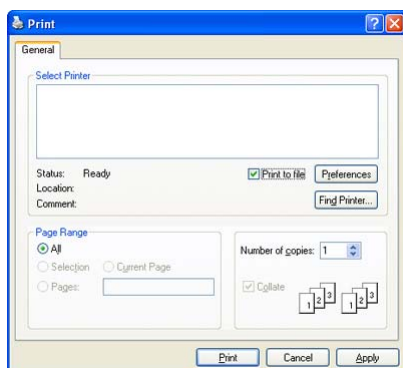
1. Click the Windows **Start** menu.
  - For Windows 2000, select **Settings > Printers**.
  - For Windows XP/2003, select **Printers and Faxes**.
  - For Windows Vista, select **Control Panel > Hardware and Sound > Printers**.
2. Select your machine.
3. Right-click your machine and select **Set as Default Printer**.

## PRINTING TO A FILE (PRN)


You will sometimes need to save the print data as a file.

To create a file:

1. Check the **Print to file** box at the **Print** window.



2. Click **Print**.
3. Type in the destination path and the file name, and then click **OK**. For example **c:\Temp\file name**.

 If you type in only the file name, the file is automatically saved in **My Documents**.

## MACINTOSH PRINTING

This section explains how to print using Macintosh. You need to set the print environment before printing.

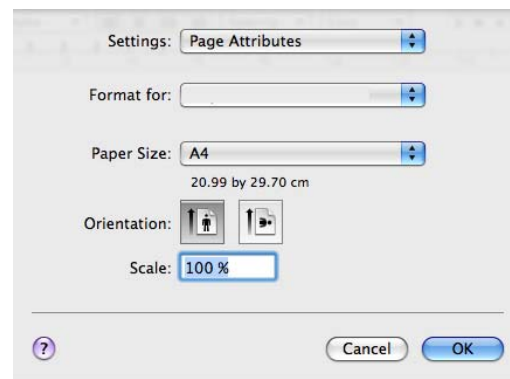
- USB connected (See "Macintosh" on page 35.)
- Network connected (See "Macintosh" on page 41.)

### Printing a document

When you print with a Macintosh, you need to check the printer driver setting in each application you use. Follow the steps below to print from a Macintosh:

1. Open the document you want to print.
2. Open the **File** menu and click **Page Setup (Document Setup** in some applications).

3. Choose your paper size, orientation, scaling, other options, and make sure that your machine is selected. Click **OK**.




4. Open the **File** menu and click **Print**.
5. Choose the number of copies you want and indicate which pages you want to print.
6. Click **Print**.

### Changing printer settings

You can use advanced printing features provided by your machine.

Open an application and select **Print** from the **File** menu. The machine name, which appears in the printer properties window may differ depending on the machine in use. Except for the name, the composition of the printer properties window is similar to the following.

 The setting options may differ depending on printers and Macintosh OS version.

### Layout

The **Layout** tab provides options to adjust how the document appears on the printed page. You can print multiple pages on one sheet of paper. Select **Layout** from the drop-down list under **Orientation** to access the following features.



- **Pages per Sheet:** This option determines how many pages to be printed on one page. (See "Printing multiple pages on one sheet of paper" on page 66.)
- **Layout Direction:** This option allows you to select the printing direction on a page similar to the examples on UI.
- **Border:** This option allows you to print a border around each page on the sheet.
- **Two-Sided:** This option allows you to print on both sides of a paper. (See "Printing on both sides of paper" on page 66.)
- **Reverse Page Orientation:** This option allows you to rotate paper 180 degrees.

## Graphics

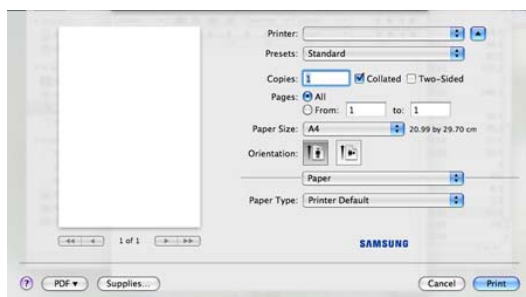
The **Graphics** tab provides options for selecting **Resolution**. Select **Graphics** from the drop-down list under **Orientation** to access the graphic features.



- **Resolution:** This option allows you to select the printing resolution. The higher the setting, the sharper the clarity of printed characters and graphics. The higher setting also may increase the time it takes to print a document.

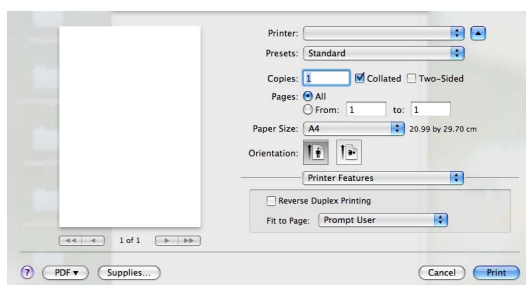
## Paper

Set **Paper Type** to correspond to the paper loaded in the tray from which you want to print. This will let you get the best quality printout. If you load a different type of print material, select the corresponding paper type.



## Printer Features

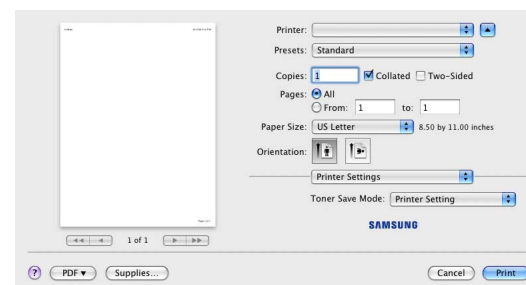
**Printer Features** tab provides **Reverse Duplex Printing** and **Fit to Page** options. Select **Printer Features** from the drop-down list under **Orientation** to access the following features.



- **Reverse Duplex Printing:** This option allows you to select general print order compared to duplex print order. If this option does not appear, your machine does not have this feature.
- **Fit to Page:** This option allows you to scale your print job to any selected paper size regardless of the document size. This can be useful when you want to check fine details on a small document.

## Toner Save Mode

Selecting this option extends the life of your toner cartridge and reduces your cost per page without a significant reduction in print quality..

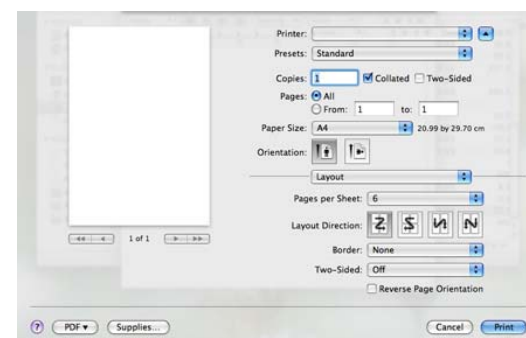


- **Printer Setting:** If you select this option, this feature is determined by the setting you have made on the control panel of the printer.
- **On:** Select this option to allow the printer to use less toner on each page.
- **Off:** If you do not need to save toner when printing a document, select this option.

## Printing multiple pages on one sheet of paper

You can print more than one page on a single sheet of paper. This feature provides a cost-effective way to print draft pages.

1. Open an application, and select **Print** from the **File** menu.
2. Select **Layout** from the drop-down list under **Orientation**. In the **Pages per Sheet** drop-down list, select the number of pages you want to print on one sheet of paper.



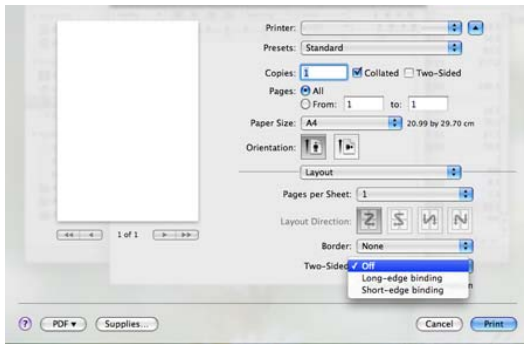
3. Select the other options you want to use.
4. Click **Print**, then the machine prints the selected number of pages you want to print on one sheet of paper.

## Printing on both sides of paper

You can print on both sides of the paper. Before printing in the duplex mode, decide on which edge you will be binding your finished document. The binding options are, as follows:

- **Long-Edge Binding:** This option is the conventional layout used in book binding.
  - **Short-Edge Binding:** This option is the type often used with calendars.
1. From your Macintosh application, select **Print** from the **File** menu.
  2. Select **Layout** from the drop-down list under **Orientation**.
  3. Select a binding orientation from **Two Sided Printing** option.
  4. Select the other options you want to use.

- Click **Print**, then the machine prints on both sides of the paper.



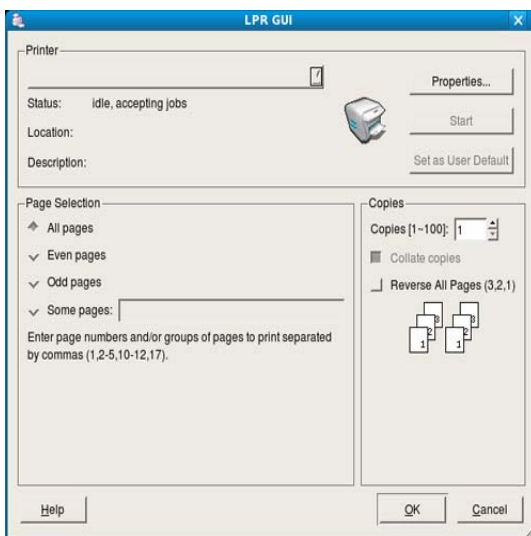
⚠ If you print more than 2 copies, the first copy and the second copy might print on same sheet of paper. Avoid printing on both sides of paper when you are printing more than 1 copy.

## LINUX PRINTING

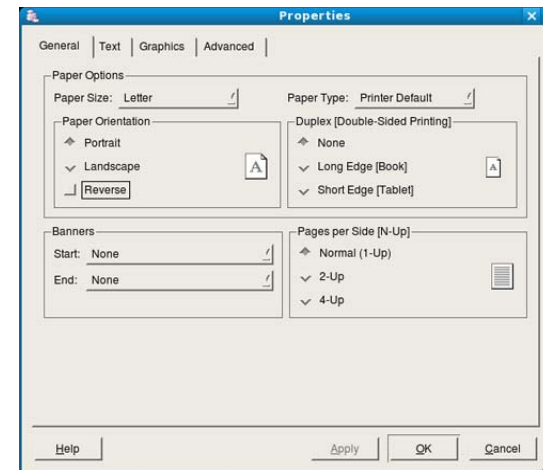
### Printing from applications

There are a lot of Linux applications that allow you to print using Common UNIX Printing System (CUPS). You can print on your machine from any such application.

- Open an application, and select **Print** from the **File** menu
- Select **Print** directly using `lpr`.
- In the LPR GUI window, select the model name of your machine from the printer list and click **Properties**.



- Change the print job properties using the following four tabs displayed at the top of the window.



- General:** This option allows you to change the paper size, the paper type, and the orientation of the documents. It enables the duplex feature, adds start and end banners, and changes the number of pages per sheet.
  - Text:** This option allows you to specify the page margins and set the text options, such as spacing or columns.
  - Graphics:** This option allows you to set image options that are used when printing image files, such as color options, image size, or image position.
  - Device:** This option allows you to set the print resolution, paper source, and destination.
- Click **Apply** to apply the changes and close the **Properties** window.
  - Click **OK** in the **LPR GUI** window to start printing.
  - The Printing window appears, allowing you to monitor the status of your print job.  
To abort the current job, click **Cancel**.

### Printing files

You can print many different types of files on your machine using the standard CUPS way, directly from the command line interface. The CUPS `lpr` utility allows you to do that. But the drivers package replaces the standard `lpr` tool by a much more user-friendly LPR GUI program.

To print any document file:

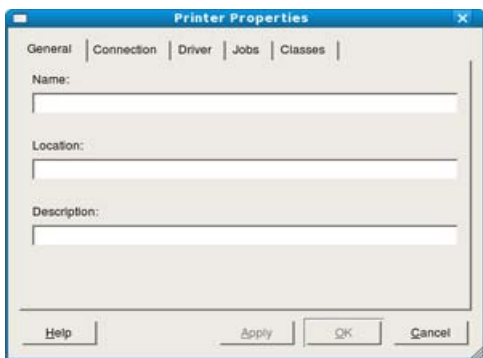
- Type `lpr <file_name>` from the Linux shell command line and press Enter. The **LPR GUI** window appears.  
When you type only `lpr` and press Enter, the **Select file(s) to print** window appears first. Just select any files you want to print and click **Open**.
- In the **LPR GUI** window, select your machine from the list, and change the print job properties.
- Click **OK** to start printing.

### Configuring Printer Properties

Using the **Printer Properties** window provided by the **Printers configuration**, you can change the various properties for your machine as a printer.

- Open the **Unified Driver Configurator**.  
If necessary, switch to **Printers configuration**.
- Select your machine on the available printers list and click **Properties**.

3. The **Printer Properties** window opens.




The following five tabs display at the top of the window:

- **General:** This option allows you to change the printer location and name. The name entered in this tab displays on the printer list in **Printers configuration**.
  - **Connection:** This option allows you to view or select another port. If you change the machine port from USB to parallel or vice versa while in use, you must re-configure the machine port in this tab.
  - **Driver:** This option allows you to view or select another machine driver. By clicking **Options**, you can set the default device options.
  - **Jobs:** This option shows the list of print jobs. Click **Cancel job** to cancel the selected job and select the **Show completed jobs** check box to see previous jobs on the job list.
  - **Classes:** This option shows the class that your machine is in. Click **Add to Class** to add your machine to a specific class or click **Remove from Class** to remove the machine from the selected class.
4. Click **OK** to apply the changes and close the **Printer Properties** window.

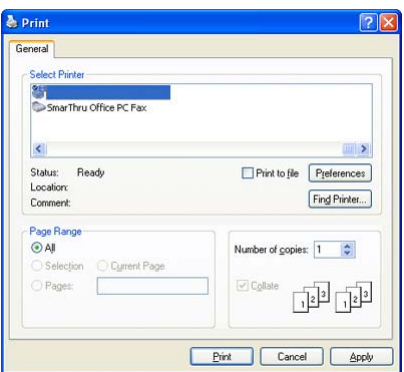
## PRINTING WITH PS DRIVER


PS printer driver PPD file is provided on the supplied software CD. If you select **Typical installation for a local printer** or **Typical installation for a network printer** when installing machine's driver, PS driver will automatically be installed. (See "Installing USB connected machine's driver" on page 34.)

 After installing the memory module, you need to select it in the printer properties of the PostScript printer driver in order to use it. (See "Activating the added accessories in PS printer properties" on page 126.)

1. Open the document you want to print.
2. Select **Print** from the **File** menu. The **Print** window appears. It may look slightly different depending on your application.  
The basic print settings are selected within the **Print** window. These

settings include the number of copies and print range.



3. Select your machine's PS driver from the **Select Printer** list.  
 To take advantage of the printer features provided by your printer driver, click **Properties** or **Preferences** in the application's **Print** window to change the print setting. (See "Understanding PS driver's Printing Preferences" on page 68.)
4. To start the print job, click **OK** or **Print** in the **Print** window.

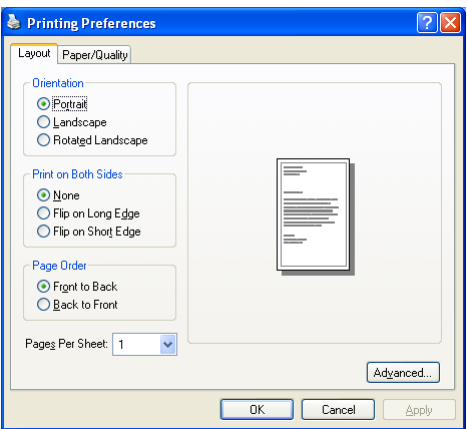
## Understanding PS driver's Printing Preferences

### Opening Printing Preferences

1. Open the document you want to print.
2. Select **Print** from the **File** menu. The **Print** window appears.
3. Select your machine's PS driver from the **Select Printer**.
4. Click **Properties** or **Preferences**.

### Layout tab

The **Layout** tab provides options to adjust how the document appears on the printed page.



### Orientation

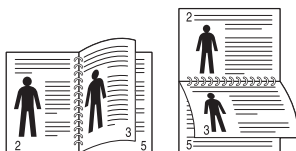
This option allows you to select the direction in which the information is printed on a page.

- **Portrait:** This option prints across the width of the page, letter style.
- **Landscape:** This option prints across the length of the page, spreadsheet style.
- **Rotate Landscape:** This option allows you to rotate the page, 180 degrees.

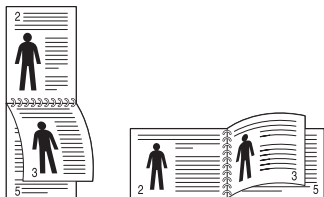
## Print on Both Sides


You can print on both sides of a sheet of paper. Before printing, decide how you want your document oriented.

- **None**
- **Flip on Long Edge:** This option is the conventional layout used in bookbinding.



- **Flip on Short Edge:** This option is the type often used with calendars.



 Do not print on both sides of labels, transparencies, envelopes, or thick papers. It may result in paper jam and damage to the machine.

## Page Order

This option allows you to select the printout order.

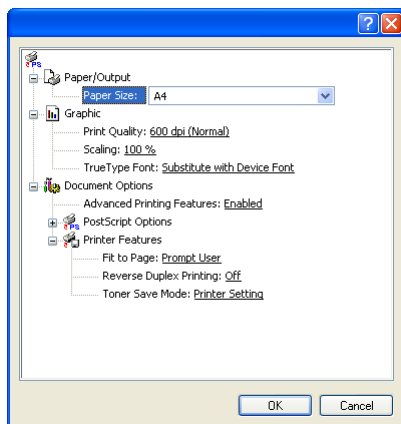
- **Front to Back:** Pages are printed out in regular order.
- **Back to Front:** Pages are printed out in reverse order.

## Pages Per Sheet

You can select the number of pages to print on a single sheet of paper. To print more than one page per sheet, the pages will be reduced in size and arranged in the order you specify. You can print up to 16 pages on one sheet.

## Advanced

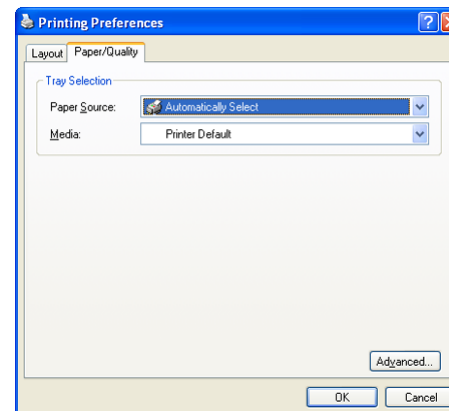
You can select **Paper Size**, **Graphic**, and **Document Options**.



- **Paper/Output:** This option allows you to choose paper size you want to use.
- **Graphic:** This option allows you to select printing quality options.
- **Document Options:** This option allows you to select options such as **PostScript Options** and **Printer Features**.

## Paper/Quality tab

You can select paper tray and media type.



- **Paper Source:** This option allows you to choose which tray to use.
- **Media:** This option allows you to choose which media to use.



# copying

This chapter gives you step-by-step instructions for copying documents.

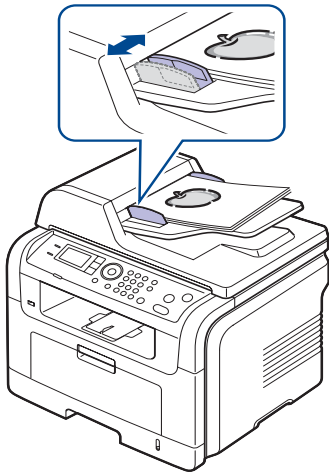
**This chapter includes:**

- Basic copy
- Changing the settings for each copy
- Changing the default copy settings
- Using special copy features
- Copying on both sides of originals
- Deciding the form of copy output
- Setting copy timeout


## BASIC COPY

This is the normal and usual procedure for copying your originals.

1. Press **Copy** on the control panel.
2. Place originals, face up, in the document feeder. Or you can use the scanner glass with a single original document face down and closed the scanner lid.




3. If necessary, adjust the settings for each copy such as **Reduce/Enlarge**, **Darkness**, **Original Type** and more. (See "Changing the settings for each copy" on page 70.)
4. Enter the number of copies using the arrow or number keypad, if necessary.
5. Press **Start** on the control panel to begin copying.

 To cancel the current copy job, press **Stop/Clear** on the control panel.

## CHANGING THE SETTINGS FOR EACH COPY

Your machine provides default settings for copying so that you can quickly and easily make a copy. However, if you want to change the options for each copy, use the copy function buttons on the control panel.

 If you press **Stop/Clear** while setting the copy options, all of the options you have set for the current copy job will be canceled and return to their default status after the machine completes the copy in progress.

## Changing the darkness

If you have an original containing faint marking and dark images, you can adjust the brightness to make a copy that is easier to read.

1. Press **Copy** on the control panel.
2. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Copy Feature** and press **OK**.
4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Darkness** and press **OK**.
5. Press the up/down arrow until the contrast mode you want highlights and press **OK**.
  - **Light**: Works well with dark print.
  - **Normal**: Works well with standard typed or printed originals.
  - **Dark**: Works well with light print.
6. Press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.

## Selecting the type of originals

The original type setting is used to improve the copy quality by selecting the document type for the current copy job.

1. Press **Copy** on the control panel.
2. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Copy Feature** and press **OK**.
4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Original Type** and press **OK**.
5. Press the up/down arrow until the image mode you want highlights and press **OK**.
  - **Text**: Use for originals containing mostly text.
  - **Text/Photo**: Use for originals with mixed text and photographs.
  - **Photo**: Use when the originals are photographs.
6. Press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.

## Reducing or enlarging copies


You can reduce or enlarge the size of a copied image from 25% to 400% when you copy original documents from the scanner glass, or from 25% to 100% from the ADF.

### To select from the predefined copy sizes:

1. Press **Copy** on the control panel.
2. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Copy Feature** and press **OK**.
4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Reduce/Enlarge** and press **OK**.
5. Press the up/down arrow until the size setting you want highlights and press **OK**.
6. Press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.

### To scale the copy by directly entering the scale rate:


1. Press **Copy** on the control panel.
2. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Copy Feature** and press **OK**.
4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Reduce/Enlarge** and press **OK**.
5. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Custom** and press **OK**.
6. Press the up/down arrow or numeric keypad to enter the copy size you want. Pressing and holding the up/down arrow allows you to quickly scroll to the number you want.
7. Press **OK** to save the selection.
8. Press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.

 When you make a reduced copy, black lines may appear at the bottom of your copy.

## CHANGING THE DEFAULT COPY SETTINGS

The copy options, including darkness, original type, copy size, collation and number of copies, can be set to those most frequently used. When you copy a document, the default settings are used unless they have been changed by using the corresponding buttons on the control panel.

1. Press **Copy** on the control panel.
2. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Copy Setup** and press **OK**.
4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Change Default** and press **OK**.
5. Press the up/down arrow until the setup option you want highlights and press **OK**.
6. Press the up/down arrow until the setting you want highlights and press **OK**.
7. Repeat steps 5 through 6, as needed.
8. Press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.

 While you are setting copy options, pressing **Stop/Clear** cancels the changed settings and restores the defaults.

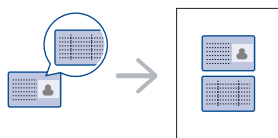
## USING SPECIAL COPY FEATURES


You can use the following copy features:

### ID card copying

Your machine can print 2-sided originals on one sheet of A4-, Letter-, Legal-, Folio-, Executive-, B5, A5, or A6-sized paper.

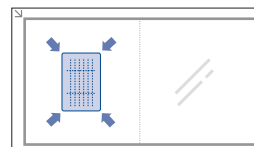
The machine prints one side of the original on the upper half of the paper and the other side on the lower half without reducing the size of the original. This feature is helpful for copying a small-sized item, such as a business card.



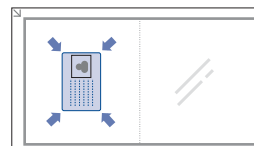
-  • This copy feature is available only when you place originals on the scanner glass.
- The size of the 2-sided originals should be smaller than A5, if not, some of it won't be copied.


1. Press **ID Copy** on the control panel.
2. **Place Front Side Press OK** appears on the display.

3. Place the front side of an original facing down on the scanner glass where arrows indicate as shown, and close the scanner lid.



4. Press **OK** on the control panel.  
Your machine begins scanning the front side and shows **Place Rear Side Press OK**.
5. Turn the original over and place it on the scanner glass, where arrows indicate as shown then, close the scanner lid.

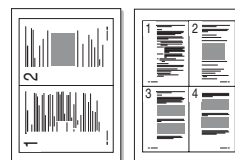


6. Press **OK** on the control panel to begin copying.
-  • If the original is larger than the printable area, some portions may not be printed.
- If you don't press the **OK** button, only the front side will be copied.
  - If you press **Stop/Clear**, the machine cancels the copy job and returns to ready mode.


### 2-up or 4-up copying (N-up)

The machine reduces the size of the original images and prints 2 or 4 pages onto one sheet of paper.

2 or 4-up copying is available only when you load originals into the document feeder.



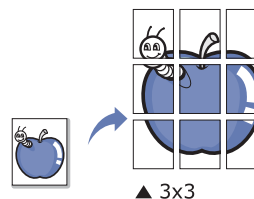
1. Press **Copy** on the control panel.
2. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Copy Feature** and press **OK**.
4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Layout** and press **OK**.
5. Press the up/down arrow until **2-Up** or **4-Up** highlights and press **OK**.
6. Press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.

 You cannot adjust the copy size using the **Reduce/Enlarge** for the **N-Up** feature.

### Poster copying

Your original will be divided into 9 portions. You can paste the printed pages together to make one poster-sized document.

This copy feature is available only when you place originals on the scanner glass.



1. Press **Copy** on the control panel.
2. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Copy Feature** and press **OK**.
4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Layout** and press **OK**.
5. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Poster Copy** and press **OK**.
6. Press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.

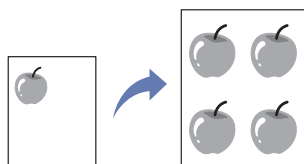
 Your original is divided into 9 portions. Each portion is scanned and printed one by one in the following order:

|   |   |   |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | 2 | 3 |
| 4 | 5 | 6 |
| 7 | 8 | 9 |


## Clone copying

The machine prints multiple original images on a single page. The number of images is automatically determined by the original image and the paper size.

This copy feature is available only when you place originals on the scanner glass.



1. Press **Copy** on the control panel.
2. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Copy Feature** and press **OK**.
4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Layout** and press **OK**.
5. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Clone Copy** and press **OK**.
6. Press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.

 You cannot adjust the copy size using the **Reduce/Enlarge** for the **Clone Copy** feature.

## COPYING ON BOTH SIDES OF ORIGINALS

You can set the machine to print copies on both sides of paper.

1. Press **Copy** on the control panel.
2. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Copy Setup** and press **OK**.
4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Duplex Print** and press **OK**.
5. Press the up/down arrow until the binding option you want highlights.
  - **Off**: Prints in Normal mode.
  - **1->2Side Long**: Prints pages to be read like a book.



- **1->2Side Short**: Prints pages to be read by flipping like a note pad.

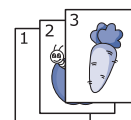
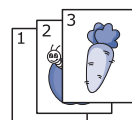


6. Press **OK** to save your selection.
7. Start copying a document.

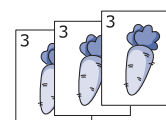
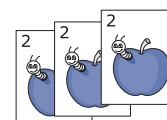
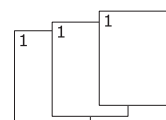
## DECIDING THE FORM OF COPY OUTPUT

You can set the machine to sort the copy job. For example, if you make 2 copies of a 3 page original, one complete 3 page document will print followed by a second complete document.

1. Press **Copy** on the control panel.
2. Place originals, face up, in the document feeder. Or you can use the scanner glass with a single original document face down and closed the scanner lid.
3. Press **OK** and enter the number of copies using the number keypad.
4. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
5. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Copy Setup** and press **OK**.
6. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Change Default** and press **OK**.
7. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Collation** and press **OK**.
8. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **On** and press **OK**.
  - **On**: Prints output in sets to match the sequence of originals.



- **Off**: Prints output sorted into stacks of individual pages.



9. Press **Start** to begin copying.  
One complete document will print followed by the second complete document.

## SETTING COPY TIMEOUT

You can set the time the machine waits before it restores the default copy settings, if you do not start copying after changing them on the control panel.


1. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
2. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **System Setup** and press **OK**.
3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Machine Setup** and press **OK**.
4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Timeout** and press **OK**.
5. Press the up/down arrow until the time setting you want highlights.  
Selecting **Off** means that the machine does not restore the default settings until you press **Start** to begin copying, or **Stop/Clear** to cancel.
6. Press **OK** to save the selection.
7. Press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.



Scanning with your machine lets you turn pictures and text into digital files that can be stored on your computer.

**This chapter includes:**

- Basic scanning method
- Scanning originals and sending through email (Scan to Email)
- Scanning originals and sending to your computer (Scan to PC)
- Scanning originals and sending via SMB/FTP (Scan to server)
- Setting authentication for authorized user
- Using Samsung Scan Manager

 The maximum resolution that can be achieved depends upon various factors, including computer speed, available disk space, memory, the size of the image being scanned, and bit depth settings. Thus, depending on your system and what you are scanning, you may not be able to scan at certain resolutions, especially using enhanced resolution.

## BASIC SCANNING METHOD

You can scan the originals with your machine via an USB cable or the network.

- **Samsung Scan Manager:** You just walk to the machine with the originals and scan them from the control panel. Then, the scanned data will be stored in the connected computers **My Documents** folder. When you install all the softwares in the supplied CD, the Samsung Scan Manager is also automatically installed on your computer. This feature can be used via the local connection or the network connection. (See "Using Samsung Scan Manager" on page 76.)
- **TWAIN:** TWAIN is the one of a preset imaging applications. Scanning an image launches the selected application, enabling you to control the scanning process. This feature can be used via the local connection or the network connection. (See "Scanning with TWAIN-enabled software" on page 78.)
- **SmarThru Office :** This program is the accompanying software for your machine. You can use this program to scan images or documents. This feature can be used via the local connection or the network connection. (See "Smarthru Office" on page 101.)
- **WIA:** WIA stands for Windows Images Acquisition. To use this feature, your computer must be connected directly with the machine via an USB cable. (See "Scanning using the WIA driver" on page 78.)
- **Email:** You can send the scanned image as an email attachment. (See "Scanning originals and sending through email (Scan to Email)" on page 73.)
- **FTP:** You can scan an image and upload it to an FTP server. (See "Scanning originals and sending via SMB/FTP (Scan to server)" on page 75.)
- **SMB:** You can scan an image and send it to a shared folder on an SMB server. (See "Scanning originals and sending via SMB/FTP (Scan to server)" on page 75.)

- Changing the scan feature settings
- Scanning with TWAIN-enabled software
- Scanning using the WIA driver
- Macintosh scanning
- Linux Scanning


## SCANNING ORIGINALS AND SENDING THROUGH EMAIL (SCAN TO EMAIL)

You can scan the originals and email the scanned image to several destinations from the machine by email.

### Setting up an email account

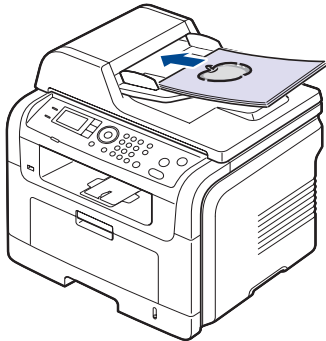
To scan and send an image as an email attachment, you need to set up network parameters using SyncThru™ Web Service.




1. Turn your networked computer on and open the web browser.
2. Enter your machine's IP address as the URL in a browser.
3. Click **Machine Settings** and **E-mail Setup**.
4. Select **IP Address** or **Host Name**.
5. Enter the IP address in dotted decimal notation or as a host name.
6. Enter the server port number, from 1 to 65535.  
The default port number is 25.
7. Check the box next to **SMTP Requires Authentication** to require authentication.
8. Enter the SMTP server login name and password.
9. Click **Apply**.

-  If the authentication method of SMTP server is POP3 before SMTP, put a check mark of **SMTP Requires POP3 Before SMTP Authentication**.
- a) Enter the IP address in dotted decimal notation or as a host name.
  - b) Enter the server port number, from 1 to 65535. The default port number is 25.

## Sending a scanned image to several destinations as an email attachment

1. Load originals face up into the document feeder, or place a single original face down on the scanner glass.  
(See "Loading originals" on page 53.)



2. Press **Scan/Email** on the control panel.
3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Scan To Email** and press **OK**.  
 If you registered **Auth ID, Password** and checked **Require Local Authentication** in **User Authentication** on **SyncThru Web Service**, **Login Name** and **Enter Password** appear. Enter the Auth ID and Password to your machine. Go to step 5.
4. When **From:** appears on the top line of the display, enter the sender's email address and press **OK**.
5. When **Destination Email:** appears on the top line of the display, enter the recipient's email address and press **OK**.
6. To enter additional addresses, press the left/right arrow to highlight **Yes** and press **OK**.  
To continue to the next step, press the left/right arrow to highlight **No** and press **OK**.
7. If the display asks if you want to see the recipient's email address, press the left/right arrow to highlight **Yes** or **No** and press **OK**.
8. If the displays asks if you want to send the email to your account, press the left/right arrow to highlight **Yes** or **No** and press **OK**.  
 This prompt does not appear if you have activated the **Auto Send To Self** option in the **SMTP Client Setup** on **SyncThru Web Service**.
9. Enter an email subject and press **OK**.
10. Press the up/down arrow until the file type you want highlights and press **OK**.  
The machine begins scanning and then sends the email.  
 While the machine is sending an email, you cannot use the machine to copy or to send a fax.
11. If the display asks if you want to log off your account, press the left/right arrow to highlight **Yes** or **No** and press **OK**.
12. Press the **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.

## Storing email addresses

You can set up **Address Book** with the email addresses you use frequently via **SyncThru™ Web Service** and then easily and quickly enter email addresses by entering the location numbers assigned to them in **Address Book**.

## Storing on your local machine

This method means that you store email addresses on your machine's memory. You can add addresses, as well as group them in particular categories.

### Individual

1. Turn your networked computer on and open the web browser.
2. Enter your machine's IP address as the URL in a browser.
3. Click **Go** to access the **SyncThru™ Web Service**.
4. Click **Machine Settings > E-mail Setup > Individual Address Book**. The screen shows **Individual Address Book** on the right side of the screen.
5. Click **Add**.
6. When the **Add E-Mail** screen appears, select the **Index** number, enter **User Name** and **E-mail Address**.
7. Click **Apply**.

### Group

1. Access to the **SyncThru™ Web Service** from your computer.
2. Make sure you have configured **Individual Address Book**.
3. Click **Machine Settings > E-mail Setup > Group Address Book**. Then the screen shows **Group Address Book** on the right side.
4. Click **Add**.
5. Select the **Group** number and enter **Group Name**.
6. Select email addresses by clicking the check boxes.
7. Click **Apply**.

## Searching Address Book for an entry

There are two ways to search for an address in memory. You can either scan from 0 to 199 sequentially or search by entering the first letters of the name associated with the address.

### Searching sequentially through memory

1. Press **Scan/Email** and **Address Book** on the control panel.
2. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Search & Send** and press **OK**.
3. Press the up/down arrow until the option you want highlights and press **OK**.
4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **All** and press **OK**.
5. Press the up/down arrow until the name and address you want highlights. You can search upwards or downwards through the entire memory in **index**(numerical) order.

### Searching with a particular first letter

1. Press **Scan/Email** and **Address Book** on the control panel.
2. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Search & Send** and press **OK**.
3. Press the up/down arrow until the option you want highlights and press **OK**.
4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **ID** and press **OK**.
5. Enter the first few letters of the name you want.
6. Press the up/down arrow until the name you want highlights and press **OK**.

## Printing Address Book

You can check your **Address Book** information by printing a list.

1. Press **Scan/Email** and **Address Book** on the control panel.
2. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Print** and press **OK**.
3. Press the up/down arrow until the option you want highlights and press **OK**.

Your **Address Book** information prints out.

## SCANNING ORIGINALS AND SENDING TO YOUR COMPUTER (SCAN TO PC)

You can scan an image on the machine via the Samsung Scan Manager program that is installed in your networked computer.

### For USB connected machine


This is a basic scanning method for usb connected machine.

1. Make sure that the machine is connected to your computer and powered on.
2. Load originals face up into the document feeder, or place a single original face down on the scanner glass.  
(See "Loading originals" on page 53.)
3. Press **Scan/Email** on the control panel.
4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Scan To PC** and press **OK**.
5. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Local PC** and press **OK**.


 If you see **Not Available** message, check the port connection.

6. Press the up/down arrow until the application program you want highlights and press **OK**.

Default setting is **My Documents**.


 To add or delete the folder where the scanned file is saved, add or delete the application program in **Samsung Scan Manager > Properties > Set Scan Button**.

7. Press the up/down arrow until the setting you want highlights and press **OK**.
  - **Resolution**: Sets the image resolution.
  - **Scan Color**: Sets the color mode.
  - **Scan Format**: Sets the file format in which the image is to be saved.
  - **Scan Size**: Sets the image size.

 • **Scan Format** appears only when you selected the Scan destination to **My Documents**.

- If you want to scan from the default setting, press **Start**.

8. Scanning begins.

 • Scanned image is saved in computer's **My Documents > My Pictures > Samsung** folder.

- You can use Twain driver to scan quickly in **Samsung Scan Manager** program.
- You can also scan by pressing Window's **Start > Control Panel > Samsung Scan Manager > Quick Scan**.

### For network connected machine

Make sure the printer driver is installed on your computer using the software CD, since the printer driver includes the scan program. (See "Installing wired network connected machine's driver" on page 40.)

1. Make sure that your machine and the computer are connected to a network and Samsung Scan Manager is installed on the computer.
2. Load originals face up into the document feeder, or place a single original face down on the scanner glass.
3. Press **Scan/Email** on the control panel.
4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Scan To PC** and press **OK**.
5. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Network PC** and press **OK**.

 If you see **Not Available** message, check the port connection.

6. Select your registered computer **ID**, and enter the **Password** if necessary.



- **ID** is the same ID as the registered **Computer ID** for **Samsung Scan Manager**.
- **Password** is the 4 digit number registered **Password** for **Samsung Scan Manager**.

7. Press the up/down arrow until the application program you want highlights and press **OK**.

Default setting is **My Documents**.



To add or delete the folder where the scanned file is saved, add or delete the application program in **Samsung Scan Manager > Properties > Set Scan Button**.

8. Press the up/down arrow until the setting you want highlights and press **OK**.

- **Resolution**: Sets the image resolution.
- **Scan Color**: Sets the color mode.
- **Scan Format**: Sets the file format in which the image is to be saved.
- **Scan Size**: Sets the image size.



• **Scan Format** appears only when you selected the Scan destination to **My Documents**.

- If you want to scan from the default setting, press **Start**.

9. Scanning begins.



• Scanned image is saved in computer's **My Documents > My Pictures > Samsung** folder.

- You can use Twain driver to scan quickly in **Samsung Scan Manager** program.
- You can also scan by pressing Window's **Start > Control Panel > Samsung Scan Manager > Quick Scan**.

## SCANNING ORIGINALS AND SENDING VIA SMB/FTP (SCAN TO SERVER)

You can scan an image and send it to a total of five destinations via the SMB or FTP.

### Setting up an FTP server

To use an FTP server, you need to set up parameters to access the FTP servers using SyncThru™ Web Service.

1. Turn your networked computer on and open the web browser.
2. Enter your machine's IP address as the URL in a browser.
3. Click **Go** to access the SyncThru™ Web Service.
4. Click **Machine Settings > FTP Setup > Server List**.
5. Click **Add**.
6. Select the **Index** number, from 1 to 20.
7. Enter a name in **Alias for the Setup**. This name will be displayed on your machine.
8. Select **IP Address** or **Host Name**.
9. Enter the server address in dotted decimal notation or a host name.
10. Enter the server port number, from 1 to 65535.  
The default port number is 21.
11. Check the box next to **Anonymous** if you want the FTP server to permit access to unauthorized people.  
This box is unchecked by default.

12. Enter the **Login Name** and **Login Password**.
13. Enter the **Scan File Folder** for saving the scanned image.
14. Click **Apply**.

## Setting up an SMB server

To use an SMB server, you need to set up parameters for access to SMB servers using SyncThru™ Web Service.

1. Turn your networked computer on and open the web browser.
2. Enter your machine's IP address as the URL in a browser.
3. Click **Go** to access the SyncThru™ Web Service.
4. Click **Machine Settings > SMB Setup > Server List**.
5. Click **Add**.
6. Select the **Index** number, from 1 to 20.
7. Enter a name in **Alias for the Setup**. This name will be displayed on your machine.
8. Select **IP Address** or **Host Name**.
9. Enter the server address in dotted decimal notation or a host name.
10. Enter the server port number, from 1 to 65535.  
The default port number is 139.
11. Enter the **Share name** of the server.
12. Check the box next to **Anonymous** if you want to permit unauthorized persons to access the SMB server.  
This box is unchecked by default.
13. Enter the **User Name** and **User Password**.
14. Enter the **User Domain**.
15. Enter the **Scan File Folder** for storing the scanned image.
16. Click **Apply**.

## Scanning and sending to SMB/FTP server

1. Make sure that your machine is connected to a network.
2. Load originals face up into the document feeder, or place a single original face down on the scanner glass..
3. Press **Scan/Email** on the control panel.
4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Scan To SMB** or **Scan To FTP**, and press **OK**.
5. Press the up/down arrow until the server you want highlights and press **OK**.
6. Press the up/down arrow until the scan format you want highlights and press **OK**.  
The machine begins scanning and then sends the scanned image to the specified server.

## SETTING AUTHENTICATION FOR AUTHORIZED USER


If you have connected your machine to a network and set up the network parameters correctly, you can scan and send images over the network.

To send a scanned image through email or via network server safely, you must register account information of authorized users to your local machine using SyncThru™ Web Service.

- If user authentication has been activated, only authorized local users can send scanned data to the network (email, FTP, SMB).
- For network scanning using the authentication feature, you must register the network or local authentication configuration using the SyncThru™ Web Service.
- User authentication has 2 options: **No Authentication** (Default) and


### Require Local Authentication.


## Registering local authorized users

1. Turn your networked computer on and open the web browser.
2. Enter your machine's IP address as the URL in a browser.
3. Click **Go** to access the SyncThru™ Web Service.
4. Click **Machine Settings > User Authentication**.
5. Select **Require Local Authentication** in the **Setup** section.  
 If you have not set **Default[From:] Address** in **SMTP Client Setup**, the notifying pop-up window appears. Click **OK** to browse the Web page where you can set the default email address.
6. Click **Apply**.
7. Click **OK** in the modifying confirmation pop-up window.
8. Select **Local Authentication** in the left pane.
9. Click **Add**.
10. Select an index number corresponding to the location for storing the entry, from 1 to 50.
11. Enter **User Name, Auth ID, Password, E-mail Address** and **Phone number**.  
You need to enter the registered user ID and password in the machine when you start scanning to email from the control panel.
12. Click **Apply**.

## USING SAMSUNG SCAN MANAGER

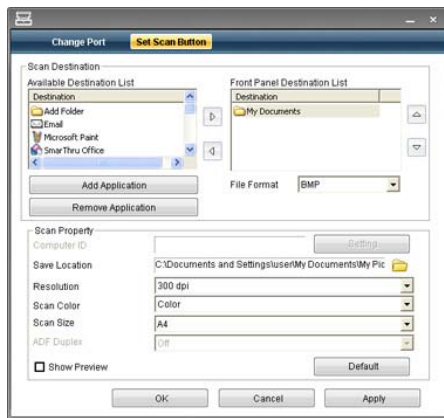
If you have installed the printer driver, Samsung Scan Manager program has installed too. Start Samsung Scan Manager program to find out about this program information and the installed scan driver's condition. Through this program, you can change scan settings and add or delete the folders where scanned documents are saved in your computer.

 The Samsung Scan Manager program can only be used in the Window and Macintosh system. If you use the Macintosh, See "Setting scan information in Scan Manager" on page 79.

1. From the **Start** menu, click **Control Panel > Samsung Scan Manager**.  
 You can open Samsung Scan Manager by right clicking the Smart Panel icon in the Windows task bar and selecting Scan Manager.
2. Select the appropriate machine from the Samsung Scan Manager window.
3. Press **Properties**.
4. The **Set Scan Button** tab allows you to change the saving destination and scan settings, add or delete application program, and format files.  
You can change the scanning machine by using the **Change Port** tab. (Local or Network)
5. When setting is done, press **OK**.



## Set Scan Button tab



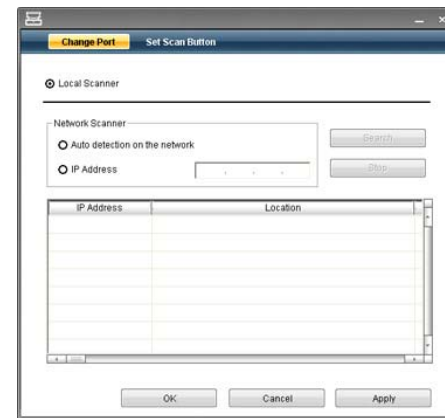
### Scan Destination

- **Available Destination List:** Shows the list of applications currently linked to scanned images in the PC's registry. Select the program you want to use and click the right arrow and add to **Front Panel Destination List**.
- **Front Panel Destination List:** Shows the list of applications to open scanned image.
- **Add Application:** Allows you to add application you want to use to **Available Destination List**.
- **Remove Application:** Allows you to remove an item added by the user in the **Available Destination List**.
- **File Format:** Allows you to select the form of scanned data to be saved. You can choose among **BMP**, **JPEG**, **PDF**, and **TIFF**.

### Scan Property

- **Computer ID:** Shows the ID of your computer.
- **Save Location:** Allows you to choose the location of the default saving folder.
- **Resolution:** Allows you to choose the scan resolution.
- **Scan Color:** Allows you to choose the scan color.
- **Scan Size:** Allows you to choose the scan size.
- **ADF Duplex:** Automatically scans both sides. If your model does not support this option, it will be grayed out.
- **Show Preview:** Checking this box allows you to preview applied scan options. You can modify the options before scanning.
- **Default:** Allows you to go back to default options.

## Change Port tab



### Local Scanner

Select when your machine is connected via USB or LPT port.

### Network Scanner

Select when your machine is connected via network port.

- **Auto detection on the network:** Automatically detects your machine.
- **IP address:** Enter in your machine's IP address to detect your machine.

## CHANGING THE SCAN FEATURE SETTINGS

Your machine provides you with the following setting options to allow you to customize your scan jobs. The settings you change will be maintained for a certain time, but after that period, the options will be reset to default values.

- **Scan Size:** Sets the image size.
- **Original Type:** Sets the original documents's type.
- **Resolution:** Sets the image resolution.
- **Scan Color:** Sets the color mode.
- **Scan Format:** Sets the file format in which the image is to be saved. If you select TIFF or PDF, you can select to scan multiple pages. Depending on the selected scan type, this option may not appear.

To customize the settings before starting a scan job:

1. Press **Scan/Email**.
2. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Scan Feature** and press **OK**.
4. Press the up/down until the scan type you want highlights and press **OK**.
5. Press the up/down until the scan setting option you want highlights and press **OK**.
6. Press the up/down arrow until the desired status highlights and press **OK**.
7. Repeat steps 5 and 6 to set other setting options.
8. When you have finished, press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.

## CHANGING THE DEFAULT SCAN SETTINGS

To avoid having to customize the scan settings for each job, you can set up default scan settings for each scan type.

1. Press **Scan/Email**.
2. Press **Menu** on the control panel.

3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Scan Setup** and press **OK**.
4. Press **OK** when **Change Default** highlights .
5. Press the up/down until the scan type you want highlights and press **OK**.
6. Press the up/down until the scan setting option you want highlights and press **OK**.
7. Press the up/down arrow until the desired status highlights and press **OK**.
8. Repeat steps 6 and 7 to set other setting options.
9. When you have finished, press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.

## SCANNING WITH TWAIN-ENABLED SOFTWARE

If you want to scan documents using other softwares, you will need to use TWAIN-compliant software, such as Adobe Photoshop.

Follow the steps below to scan with TWAIN-compliant software:

1. Make sure that the machine is connected to your computer and powered on.
2. Load originals face up into the document feeder, or place a single original face down on the scanner glass.  
(See "Loading originals" on page 53.)
3. Open an application, such as Adobe Photoshop.
4. Open the TWAIN window and set the scan options.
5. Scan and save your scanned image.

## SCANNING USING THE WIA DRIVER

Your machine also supports the Windows Image Acquisition (WIA) driver for scanning images. WIA is one of the standard components provided by Microsoft Windows XP and works with digital cameras and scanners. Unlike the TWAIN driver, the WIA driver allows you to scan and easily adjust images without using additional software.



The WIA driver works only on Windows XP/Vista with a USB port.

### Windows XP

1. Make sure that the machine is connected to your computer and powered on.
2. Load originals face up into the document feeder, or place a single original face down on the scanner glass.  
(See "Loading originals" on page 53.)
3. From the **Start** menu, select **Control Panel**, > **Scanners and Cameras**.
4. Double click your scanner driver icon. The **Scanner and Camera** Wizard appears.
5. Click **Next**.
6. Set the option in **Choose scanning preferences** window and click **Preview** to see how your options affect the picture.
7. Click **Next**.
8. Enter a picture name, and select a file format and destination to save the picture.
9. Your picture has been successfully copied to your computer. Choose one of the options on screen.
10. Click **Next**.
11. Click **Finish**.

## Windows Vista

1. Make sure that the machine is connected to your computer and powered on.
2. Load originals face up into the document feeder, or place a single original face down on the scanner glass.  
(See "Loading originals" on page 53.)
3. From the **Start** menu select **Control Panel > Hardware and Sound > Scanners and Cameras**.
4. Double click **Scan a document or picture**. **Windows Fax and Scan** application appears.
  - You can click on **View scanners and cameras** to view scanners,
  - If there is no **Scan a document or picture**, open the MS paint program and from the **File** click **From Scanner or Camera...**
5. Click **New Scan**. Scan driver appears.
6. Choose your scanning preferences and click **Preview** to see your preferences affect the picture.
7. Click **Scan**.



If you want to cancel the scan job, press the **Cancel** button on the **Scanner and Camera** Wizard.

## MACINTOSH SCANNING

You can scan documents using **Image Capture** program. Macintosh OS offers **Image Capture** program.

### Scanning with USB

1. Make sure that the machine is connected to your computer and powered on.
2. Load originals face up into the document feeder, or place a single original face down on the scanner glass.  
(See "Loading originals" on page 53.)
3. Start **Applications** and click **Image Capture**.
  - If **No Image Capture device connected** message appears, disconnect the USB cable and reconnect it. If the problem continues, refer to the **Image Capture's** help.
4. Set the scan options on this program.
5. Scan and save your scanned image.
  - For more information about using **Image Capture**, refer to the **Image Capture's** help.
  - Use TWAIN-compliant softwares to apply more scan options.
  - You can also scan using TWAIN-compliant softwares, such as Adobe Photoshop.
  - Scan process differ according to TWAIN-compliant softwares. Please refer to the user's guide of the software.
  - If scanning does not operate in **Image Capture**, update Mac OS to the latest version. **Image Capture** operates properly in Mac OS X 10.3.9 or higher and Mac OS X 10.4.7 or higher.

### Scanning with network

1. Make sure that the machine is connected to your computer and powered on.
2. Load originals face up into the document feeder , or place a single original face down on the scanner glass.  
(See "Loading originals" on page 53.)

3. Start **Applications** and click **Image Capture**.

4. Click **Devices** and click **Browse Devices**.

5. For Mac OS X 10.4:

Select your machine in Twain devices option. Make sure that **Use TWAIN software** checkbox is checked, and click **Connect**.

- If a warning message appears, click **Change Port..** to select port.
- If TWAIN UI appears, from the **Preference** tab, click **Change Port..** to select port.

 Refer to Scan Manager for **Change port..** use. (See "Setting scan information in Scan Manager" on page 79.)


For Mac OS X 10.5:

Make sure that **Connected** checkbox is checked beside your machine in **Bonjour Devices**.

If you want to scan using TWAIN, refer to the Mac OS X10.4 steps above.

6. Set the scan options on this program.

7. Scan and save your scanned image.

-  • For more information about using **Image Capture**, refer to the **Image Capture's** help.
- Use TWAIN-compliant softwares to apply more scan options.
  - You can also scan using TWAIN-compliant softwares, such as Adobe Photoshop.
  - Scan process differ according to TWAIN-compliant softwares. Please refer to the user's guide of the software.
  - If scanning does not operate in **Image Capture**, update Mac OS to the latest version. **Image Capture** operates properly in Mac OS X 10.3.9 or higher and Mac OS X 10.4.7 or higher.

## Setting scan information in Scan Manager


To find out about Scan Manager program information, to check the installed scan driver's condition, to change scan settings. and to add or delete the folders where scanned documents to computer are saved in Scan Manager program, follow these instructions:

1. From the Smart Panel menu on Status bar, click Scan Manager.
2. Select the appropriate machine from the Scan Manager .
3. Press **Properties**.
4. Use **Set Scan Button** to change the file destination or scan settings, to add or delete application programs, and to format files. You can change the scanning machine by using **Change port**. (Local or Network)
5. When done, press **OK**.

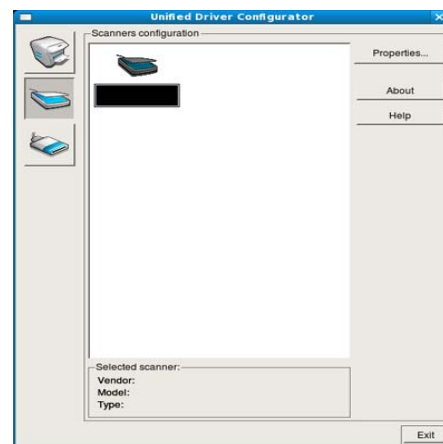
## LINUX SCANNING

You can scan a document using the Unified Driver Configurator window.

### Scanning

1. Double-click the **Unified Driver Configurator** on your desktop.
2. Click the  button to switch to Scanners Configuration.

3. Select the scanner on the list.



If you use only one machine device and it is connected to the computer and turned on, your scanner appears on the list and is automatically selected.

If you have two or more scanners connected to your computer, you can select any scanner to work at any time. For example, while acquisition is in progress on the first scanner, you may select the second scanner, set the device options and start the image acquisition simultaneously.

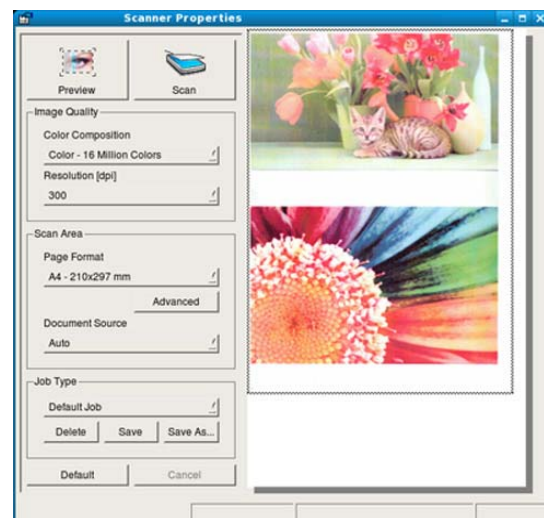
4. Click **Properties**.

5. Load originals face up into the document feeder, or place a single original face down on the scanner glass.

(See "Loading originals" on page 53.)

6. From the **Scanner Properties** window, click **Preview**.

The document is scanned and the image preview appears in the **Preview Pane**.



7. Drag the pointer to set the image area to be scanned in the **Preview Pane**.

8. Change the scan options in the **Image Quality** and **Scan Area** sections.

- **Image Quality:** This option allows you to select the color composition and the scan resolution for the image.
- **Scan Area:** This option allows you to select the page size. The **Advanced** button enables you to set the page size manually.

If you want to use one of the preset scan option settings, select the option from the **Job Type** drop-down list. (See "Adding Job Type



Settings" on page 80.)

Click **Default** to restore the default setting for the scan options.

9. When you have finished, click **Scan** to start scanning.

The status bar appears on the bottom left of the window to show you the progress of the scan. To cancel scanning, click **Cancel**.

10. The scanned image appears.

If you want to edit the scanned image, use the toolbar. (See "Using the Image Manager" on page 80.)

11. When you are finished, click **Save** on the toolbar.

12. Select the file directory where you want to save the image and enter the file name.

13. Click **Save**.

## Adding Job Type Settings

You can save your scan option settings for later use.

### To save a new Job Type setting:

1. Change the options from the Scanner Properties window.
2. Click **Save As**.
3. Enter the name for your setting.
4. Click **OK**.

Your setting is added to the **Saved Settings** drop-down list.

### To save a Job Type setting for the next scan job:

1. Select the setting you want to use from the **Job Type** drop-down list.
2. The next time you open the **Scanner Properties** window, the saved setting is automatically selected for the scan job.

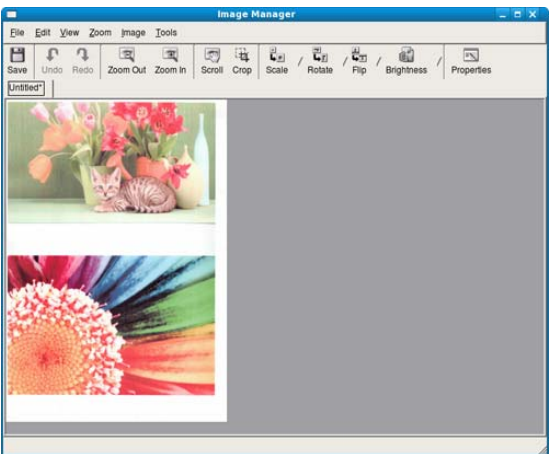
### To delete a Job Type setting

1. Select the setting you want to delete from the **Job Type** drop-down list.
2. Click **Delete**.













The setting is deleted from the list.

## Using the Image Manager

The Image Manager application provides you with menu commands and tools to edit your scanned image.



Use the following tools to edit the image:


| TOOLS                                                                                 | NAME              | FUNCTION                                                                                                                                   |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|    | <b>Save</b>       | Saves the image.                                                                                                                           |
|    | <b>Undo</b>       | Cancels your last action.                                                                                                                  |
|    | <b>Redo</b>       | Restores the action you canceled.                                                                                                          |
|    | <b>Scroll</b>     | Allows you to scroll through the image.                                                                                                    |
|    | <b>Crop</b>       | Crops the selected image area.                                                                                                             |
|    | <b>Zoom Out</b>   | Zooms the image out.                                                                                                                       |
|    | <b>Zoom In</b>    | Zooms the image in.                                                                                                                        |
|    | <b>Scale</b>      | Allows you to scale the image size; you can enter the size manually, or set the rate to scale proportionally, vertically, or horizontally. |
|    | <b>Rotate</b>     | Allows you to rotate the image; you can select the number of degrees from the drop-down list.                                              |
|    | <b>Flip</b>       | Allows you to flip the image vertically or horizontally.                                                                                   |
|   | <b>Effect</b>     | Allows you to adjust the brightness or contrast of the image, or to invert the image.                                                      |
|  | <b>Properties</b> | Shows the properties of the image.                                                                                                         |

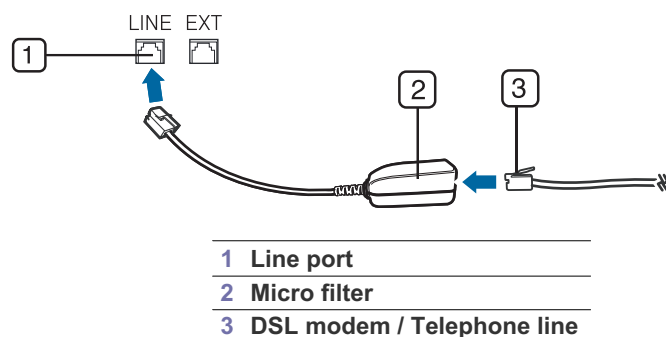
For further details about the Image Manager application, refer to the on screen help.

This chapter gives you information about using your machine as a fax machine.

## This chapter includes:

- Preparing to fax
- Sending a fax
- Receiving a fax
- Adjusting the document settings

-  • We recommend you to use traditional analog phone services (PSTN: public switched telephone network) when connecting telephone lines to use Fax. If you use other Internet services (DSL, ISDN, VoIP), you can improve the connection quality by using the Micro-filter. The Micro-filter eliminates unnecessary noise signals and improves connection quality or Internet quality. Since the DSL Micro-filter is not provided with the machine, contact your Internet Service provider for use on DSL Micro-filter.




## PREPARING TO FAX

Before you send or receive a fax, you need to connect the supplied line cord to the wall jack. Refer to the Quick Install Guide how to make a connection. The method of making a telephone connection is varies from one country to another.

## SENDING A FAX

This part explains how to send a fax and the special methods of transmission.

-  When you place the originals, you can use either the document feeder or the scanner glass. (See "Loading originals" on page 53.) If the originals are placed on both the document feeder and the scanner glass, the machine will read the originals on the document feeder first, which has higher priority in scanning.

### Setting the fax header

In some countries, you are required by law to indicate your fax number on any fax you send.

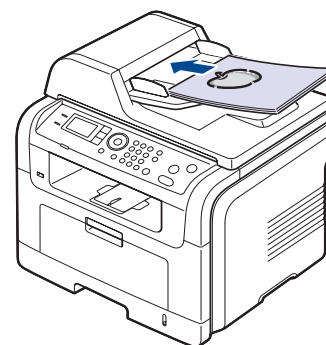
1. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
2. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **System Setup** and press **OK**.
3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Machine Setup** and press **OK**.


- Forwarding a fax to other destination
- Setting up address book
- Printing sent fax report automatically

4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Machine ID** and press **OK**.
5. Enter your name or the company name using the number keypad. You can enter alphanumeric characters using the number keypad, and include special symbols by pressing the 1 button. For details on how to enter alphanumeric characters, see "Entering characters using the number keypad" on page 50.
6. Press **OK** to save the ID.
7. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Machine Fax No.** and press **OK**.
8. Enter your fax number using the number keypad and press **OK**.
9. Press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.

### Sending a fax

1. Press **Fax** on the control panel.
2. Load originals face up into the document feeder, or place a single original face down on the scanner glass.




3. Adjust the resolution and the darkness to suit your fax needs. (See "Adjusting the document settings" on page 85.)
  4. Enter the receiving fax machine's number.  
You can use speed dial numbers, or group dial numbers. For details about storing and searching for a number, see "Setting up address book" on page 86.
  5. Press **Start** on the control panel. The machine starts to scan and send a fax to destinations.
-  • If you want to send fax directly from your computer, use SmarThru Office. (See "Using SmarThru Office" on page 101.)
- When you want to cancel a fax job, press **Stop/Clear** before the machine start transmission.
  - If you used the scanner glass, the machine shows the message asking to place another page.
  - While the machine is sending a fax, you can not send an email at the same time.

## Sending a fax manually

This method is sending a fax using **On Hook Dial** on the control panel. If your machine is SCX-5635HN, you can send a fax using the handset.

1. Press **Fax** on the control panel.
2. Load originals face up into the document feeder, or place a single original face down on the scanner glass.
3. Adjust the resolution and the darkness to suit your fax needs. (See "Adjusting the document settings" on page 85.)
4. Press **On Hook Dial** on the control panel or lift the handset.
5. Enter a fax number using the number keypad on the control panel.
6. Press **Start** when you hear a high-pitched fax signal from the remote fax machine.

 When you want to cancel a fax job, press **Stop/Clear** at any time while sending.

## Confirming a transmission

When the last page of your original has been sent successfully, the machine beeps and returns to ready mode.

When something goes wrong while sending your fax, an error message appears on the display. For a list of error messages and their meanings, see "Understanding display messages" on page 112. If you receive an error message, press **Stop/Clear** to clear the message and try to send the fax again.

You can set your machine to print a confirmation report automatically each time sending a fax is completed. For further details, see "Printing sent fax report automatically" on page 88.

## Automatic redialing

When the number you have dialed is busy or there is no answer when you send a fax, the machine automatically redials the number every three minutes, up to seven times according to the factory default settings..

When the display shows **Retry Redial?**, press **OK** to redial the number without waiting. To cancel the automatic redialing, press **Stop/Clear**.

To change the time interval between redials and the number of redial attempts. (see "Changing the fax setup options" on page 92.)

## Redialing the last number

To redial the number you called last:

1. Press **Redial/Pause** on the control panel.
2. When an original is loaded in the document feeder, the machine automatically begins to send.  
If an original is placed on the scanner glass, select **Yes** to add another page. Load another original and press **OK**. When you have finished, select **No** at the **Another Page?** prompt.

## Sending a fax to multiple destinations

You can use the Multiple Send feature, which allows you to send a fax to multiple locations. Originals are automatically stored in memory and sent to a remote station. After transmission, the originals are automatically erased from memory. You cannot send a color fax using this feature.

1. Press **Fax** on the control panel.
2. Load originals face up into the document feeder, or place a single original face down on the scanner glass.
3. Adjust the resolution and the darkness to suit your fax needs. (See "Adjusting the document settings" on page 85.)
4. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
5. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Fax Feature** and press **OK**.

6. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Multi Send** and press **OK**.
7. Enter the number of the first receiving fax machine and press **OK**.  
You can press speed dial numbers or select group dial number using **Address book** button. For details, see "Setting up address book" on page 86.
8. Enter the second fax number and press **OK**.  
The display asks you to enter another fax number to send the document.
9. To enter more fax numbers, press **OK** when **Yes** highlights and repeat steps 7 and 8. You can add up to 10 destinations.
10. Press **OK** to start storing the scanned original data into memory.



Once you entered a group dial number, you cannot enter another group dial numbers anymore.

11. When you have finished entering fax numbers, press the left/right arrow to select **No** at the **Another No.?** prompt and press **OK**.
12. If an original is placed on the scanner glass, select **Yes** to add another pages. Load another original and press **OK**.  
When you have finished, select **No** at the **Another Page?** prompt.  
The machine begins sending the fax to the numbers you entered in the order in which you entered them.

## Delaying a fax transmission

You can set your machine to send a fax at a later time when you will not be present. You cannot send a color fax using this feature.

1. Press **Fax** on the control panel.
2. Load originals face up into the document feeder, or place a single original face down on the scanner glass.
3. Adjust the resolution and the darkness to suit your fax needs. (See "Adjusting the document settings" on page 85.)
4. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
5. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Fax Feature** and press **OK**.
6. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Delay Send** and press **OK**.
7. Enter the number of the receiving fax machine and press **OK**.  
You can press speed dial numbers or select group dial number using **Address book** button. For details, see "Setting up address book" on page 86.
8. The display asks you to enter another fax number to send the document.
9. To enter more fax numbers, press **OK** when **Yes** highlights and repeat steps 7. You can add up to 10 destinations.



Once you entered a group dial number, you cannot enter another group dial numbers anymore.

10. When you have finished entering fax numbers, press the left/right arrow to select **No** at the **Another No.?** prompt and press **OK**.
11. Enter the job name you want and press **OK**.  
For details on how to enter alphanumeric characters, see "Entering characters using the number keypad" on page 50.  
If you do not want to assign a name, skip this step.
12. Enter the time using the number keypad and press **OK**.



If you set a time earlier than the current time, the fax will be sent at that time on the following day.

The original is scanned into memory before transmission.

13. If an original is placed on the scanner glass, select **Yes** to add another pages. Load another original and press **OK**.  
When you have finished, select **No** at the **Another Page?** prompt.  
The machine returns to ready mode. The display reminds you that you are in ready mode and that a delayed fax is set.

## Adding documents to a reserved delay fax job

You can add additional documents to the delayed fax job which is saved in memory.

1. Load the originals to be added and adjust document settings.
2. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Fax Feature** and press **OK**.
4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Add pages** and press **OK**.
5. Press the up/down arrow until the fax job you want appears and press **OK**.

When you have finished, select **No** at the **Another Page?** prompt.

The machine scans the original into memory.

6. Press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.

## Canceling a reserved delay fax job

You can add additional documents to the delayed fax job which is saved in memory.

1. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
2. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Fax Feature** and press **OK**.
3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Cancel Job** and press **OK**.
4. Press the up/down arrow until the fax job you want appears and press **OK**.

5. Press **OK** when **Yes** highlights.

The selected fax is deleted from memory.

6. Press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.

## Sending a priority fax

This function is used when a high priority fax need to be sent ahead of reserved operations. The original is scanned into memory and immediately transmitted when the current operation is finished. In addition, priority transmission will interrupt a sending to multiple destinations between stations (example, when the transmission to station A ends, before transmission to station B begins) or between redial attempts.

1. Press **Fax** on the control panel.
2. Load originals face up into the document feeder, or place a single original face down on the scanner glass.
3. Adjust the resolution and the darkness to suit your fax needs. (See "Adjusting the document settings" on page 85.)
4. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
5. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Fax Feature** and press **OK**.
6. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Priority Send** and press **OK**.
7. Enter the number of the receiving fax machine and press **OK**.

You can press speed dial numbers or select group dial number using **Address book** button. For details, see "Setting up address book" on page 86.

8. Enter the job name you want and press **OK**.  
The original is scanned into memory before transmission.
9. If an original is placed on the scanner glass, select **Yes** to add another pages. Load another original and press **OK**.

When you have finished, select **No** at the **Another Page?** prompt.

The machine starts to scan and send a fax to destinations.

## RECEIVING A FAX

This part explains how to receive a fax, and the special receiving methods available.

## Changing the receive modes

Your machine is preset to **Fax** mode at the factory. When you receive a fax, the machine answers the call on a specified number of rings and automatically receives the fax. But if you want to change the Fax mode to another mode, follow the steps below:

1. Press **Fax** on the control panel.
2. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Fax Setup** and press **OK**.
4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Receiving** and press **OK**.
5. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Receive Mode** and press **OK**.
6. Press the up/down arrow until the fax reception mode you want highlights.
  - **Fax**: Answers an incoming fax call and immediately goes into the fax reception mode.
  - **Tel**: Receives a fax by pressing **On Hook Dial** and then **Start**. If your machine is SCX-5635HN, you can receive a fax by picking up the handset.
  - **Ans/Fax**: Is for when an answering machine attached to your machine. Your machine answers an incoming call, and the caller can leave a message on the answering machine. If the fax machine senses a fax tone on the line, the machine automatically switches to Fax mode to receive the fax.
  - **DRPD**: you can receive a call using the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) feature. Distinctive Ring is a telephone company service which enables an user to use a single telephone line to answer several different telephone numbers. For further details, see "Receiving faxes using DRPD mode" on page 84.
7. Press **OK** to save your selection.
8. Press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.



- To use the **Ans/Fax** mode, attach an answering machine to the EXT socket on the back of your machine.
- If you do not want other people to view your received documents, you can use secure receiving mode. In this mode, all of the received faxes are stored in memory. For further details, see "Receiving in secure receiving mode" on page 84.

## Receiving manually in Tel mode

You can receive a fax call by pressing **On Hook Dial** and then pressing **Start** when you hear a fax tone from the remote machine. The machine begins receiving a fax. If your machine is SCX-5635HN, you can answer calls using the handset.

To change the number of rings, see "Changing the fax setup options" on page 92.

## Receiving automatically in Answering Machine/Fax mode

To use this mode, you must attach an answering machine to the EXT socket on the back of your machine. (See "Rear view" on page 29.)

If the caller leaves a message, the answering machine stores the message as it would normally. If your machine detects a fax tone on the line, it automatically starts to receive the fax.



- If you have set your machine to this mode and your answering machine is switched off, or no answering machine is connected to EXT socket, your machine automatically goes into Fax mode after a predefined number of rings.
- If your answering machine has a user-selectable ring counter, set the machine to answer incoming calls within 1 ring.
- If you are in Tel mode when the answering machine is connected



to your machine, you must switch off the answering machine. otherwise, the outgoing message from the answering machine will interrupt your phone conversation.

## Receiving faxes manually using an extension telephone

This feature works best when you are using an extension telephone connected to the EXT socket on the back of your machine. You can receive a fax from someone you are talking to on the extension telephone, without going to the fax machine.

When you receive a call on the extension phone and hear fax tones, press the keys \*9\* on the extension phone. The machine receives the fax.

Press the buttons slowly in sequence. If you still hear the fax tone from the remote machine, try pressing \*9\* once again.

\*9\* is the remote receive code preset at the factory. The first and the last asterisks are fixed, but you can change the middle number to whatever you wish. For details about changing the code, see "Changing the fax setup options" on page 92

## Receiving faxes using DRPD mode

Distinctive Ring is a telephone company service which enables an user to use a single telephone line to answer several different telephone numbers. The particular number someone uses to call you is identified by different ringing patterns, which consist of various combinations of long and short ringing sounds. This feature is often used by answering services who answer telephones for many different clients and need to know which number someone is calling in on to properly answer the phone.

Using the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) feature, your fax machine can learn the ring pattern you designate to be answered by the fax machine. Unless you change it, this ringing pattern will continue to be recognized and answered as a fax call, and all other ringing patterns will be forwarded to the extension telephone or answering machine plugged into the EXT socket. You can easily suspend or change DRPD at any time.

Before using the DRPD option, Distinctive Ring service must be installed on your telephone line by the telephone company. To set up DRPD, you will need another telephone line at your location, or someone available to dial your fax number from outside.

To set up the DRPD mode:

1. Press **Fax** on the control panel.
2. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Fax Setup** and press **OK**.
4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Receiving** and press **OK**.
5. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Receive Mode** and press **OK**.
6. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **DRPD** and press **OK**.

**Waiting Ring** appears on the display.

7. Call your fax number from another telephone. It is not necessary to place the call from a fax machine.
8. When your machine begins to ring, do not answer the call. The machine requires several rings to learn the pattern..

When the machine completes learning, the display shows **Completed DRPD Setup**. If the DRPD setup fails, **Error DRPD Ring** appears.

Press OK when DRPD appears and start over from step 6.



- DRPD must be set up again if you re-assign your fax number, or connect the machine to another telephone line.
- After DRPD has been set up, call your fax number again to verify that the machine answers with a fax tone. Then have a call placed to a different number assigned to that same line to be sure the call is forwarded to the extension telephone or answering machine plugged into the EXT socket.

## Receiving in secure receiving mode

You may need to prevent your received faxes from being accessed by unauthorized people. You can turn on secure receiving mode to restrict printing of received faxes when the machine is unattended. In secure receiving mode, all incoming faxes go into memory. When the mode is deactivated, any stored faxes are printed.

## Activating secure receiving mode

1. Press **Fax** on the control panel.
2. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Fax Feature** and press **OK**.
4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Secure Receive** and press **OK**.
5. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **On** and press **OK**.
6. Enter a four-digit password you want to use and press **OK**.



You can activate secure receiving mode without setting a password, but cannot protect your faxes.

7. Re-enter the password to confirm it and press **OK**.
8. Press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.

When a fax is received in secure receiving mode, your machine stores it in memory and shows **Secure Receive** to let you know that there is a fax received.

## Printing received faxes

1. Access the **Secure Receive** menu by following steps 1 through 4 in "Activating secure receiving mode."
  2. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Print** and press **OK**.
  3. Enter the four-digit password and press **OK**.
- The machine prints all of the faxes stored in memory.

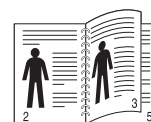
## Deactivating secure receiving mode

1. Access the **Secure Receive** menu by following steps 1 through 4 in "Activating secure receiving mode."
  2. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Off** and press **OK**.
  3. Enter the four-digit password and press **OK**.
- The mode is deactivated and the machine prints all faxes stored in memory.
4. Press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.

## Printing received faxes on both sides of the paper

Set this duplex feature to save paper. When the machine prints the received fax data, it prints them on both sides of the paper.

1. Press **Fax** on the control panel.
2. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Fax Setup** and press **OK**.
4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Receiving** and press **OK**.
5. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Duplex Print** and press **OK**.
6. Press the up/down arrow until the binding option you want highlights.
  - **Off**: Prints in Normal mode.
  - **Long Edge**: Prints pages to be read like a book.



- **Short Edge:** Prints pages to be read by flipping like a note pad.



7. Press **OK** to save your selection.
8. Press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.

### Receiving faxes in memory

Since your machine is a multi-tasking device, it can receive faxes while you are making copies or printing. If you receive a fax while you are copying or printing, your machine stores incoming faxes in its memory. Then, as soon as you finish copying or printing, the machine automatically prints the fax.

## ADJUSTING THE DOCUMENT SETTINGS

Before starting a fax, change the following settings according to your original's status to get the best quality.

### Resolution


The default document settings procedure good results when using typical text-based originals. However, if you send originals that are of poor quality, or contain photographs, you can adjust the resolution to produce a higher quality fax.

1. Press **Fax** on the control panel.
2. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Fax Feature** and press **OK**.
4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Resolution** and press **OK**.
5. Press the up/down arrow until the option you want highlights and press **OK**.
6. Press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.

Recommended resolution settings for different original document types are described in the table below:

| MODE     | RECOMMENDED FOR:                                                                                     |
|----------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Standard | Originals with normal sized characters.                                                              |
| Fine     | Originals containing small characters or thin lines or originals printed using a dot-matrix printer. |


| MODE       | RECOMMENDED FOR:                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Super Fine | <p>Originals containing extremely fine detail. <b>Super Fine</b> mode is enabled only if the machine with which you are communicating also supports the Super Fine resolution.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For memory transmission, <b>Super Fine</b> mode is not available. The resolution setting is automatically changed to <b>Fine</b></li> <li>• When your machine is set to <b>Super Fine</b> resolution and the fax machine with which you are communicating does not support <b>Super Fine</b> resolution, the machine transmits using the highest resolution mode supported by the other fax machine.</li> </ul> |
| Photo Fax  | Originals containing shades of gray or photographs.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Color Fax  | Originals with colors. Sending a color fax is enabled only if the machine with which you are communicating supports color fax reception and you send the fax manually. In this mode, memory transmission is not available.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |

 The resolution setting is applied to the current fax job. To change the default setting, see "Change Default" on page 93.

### Darkness


You can select the degree of darkness of the original document.

1. Press **Fax** on the control panel.
2. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Fax Feature** and press **OK**.
4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Darkness** and press **OK**.
5. Press the up/down arrow until the option you want highlights and press **OK**.
6. Press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.

 The darkness setting is applied to the current fax job. To change the default setting, see "Change Default" on page 93.

## FORWARDING A FAX TO OTHER DESTINATION

You can set the machine to forward the received or sent fax to other destination by a fax, an email or a server. If you are out of office but have to receive the fax, this feature may be useful.

 When you forward a fax by an email, you firstly set the mail server and IP address in SyncThru™ Web Service. (See "Using SyncThru™ Web Service" on page 99.)

### Forwarding a sent fax to other destination by a fax

You can set the machine to forward every fax you sent to other destination by faxing.

1. Press **Fax** on the control panel.
2. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Fax Feature** and press **OK**.
4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Forward** and press **OK**.
5. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Fax** and press **OK**.
6. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Send Forward** and press **OK**.
7. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **On** and press **OK**.



8. Enter the number of the fax machine to which faxes are to be sent and press **OK**.
9. Press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.  
Subsequent sent faxes will be forwarded to the specified fax machine.

## Forwarding a received fax to other destination by a fax

With this feature, you can forward every fax you received to other destination by faxing. When the machine receives a fax, a fax is stored in the memory then, the machine sends it to the destination you have set.

1. Press **Fax** on the control panel.
2. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Fax Feature** and press **OK**.
4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Forward** and press **OK**.
5. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Fax** and press **OK**.
6. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Receive Forward** and press **OK**.
7. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Forward** and press **OK**.  
To set the machine to print out a fax when fax forwarding has been completed, select **Forward & Print**.
8. Enter the number of the fax machine to which faxes are to be sent and press **OK**.
9. Enter the starting time using up/down, left/right arrow or numeric keypad and press **OK**.
10. Enter the ending time using up/down, left/right arrow or numeric keypad and press **OK**.
11. Press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.  
Subsequent received faxes will be forwarded to the specified fax machine.

## Forwarding a sent fax to other destination by an email


1. Press **Fax** on the control panel.
2. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Fax Feature** and press **OK**.
4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Forward** and press **OK**.
5. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Email** and press **OK**.
6. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Send Forward** and press **OK**.
7. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **On** and press **OK**.
8. Enter your email address and press **OK**.
9. Enter the email address to which faxes are to be sent and press **OK**.
10. Press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.  
Subsequent sent faxes will be forwarded to the specified email address.

## Forwarding a received fax to other destination by an email

1. Press **Fax** on the control panel.
2. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Fax Feature** and press **OK**.
4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Forward** and press **OK**.
5. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Email** and press **OK**.
6. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Receive Forward** and press **OK**.
7. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Forward** and press **OK**.  
To set the machine to print out a fax when fax forwarding has been completed, select **Forward & Print**.
8. Enter your email address and press **OK**.


9. Enter the email address to which faxes are to be sent and press **OK**.
10. Press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.  
Subsequent received faxes will be forwarded to the specified email address.

## Forwarding a sent fax to other destination by a server

 When you forward a fax to FTP or SMB server, you firstly set the server in SyncThru™ Web Service. (See "Setting up an FTP server" on page 75 or "Setting up an SMB server" on page 76.) You can forward a fax to a total of five destinations via the SMB or FTP.

1. Press **Fax** on the control panel.
2. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Fax Feature** and press **OK**.
4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Forward** and press **OK**.
5. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Server** and press **OK**.
6. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Send Forward** and press **OK**.
7. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **On** and press **OK**.
8. Press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.  
Subsequent sent faxes will be forwarded to the specified server.


## Forwarding a received fax to other destination by server

 When you forward a fax to FTP or SMB server, you firstly set the server in SyncThru™ Web Service. (See "Setting up an FTP server" on page 75 or "Setting up an SMB server" on page 76.) You can forward a fax to a total of five destinations via the SMB or FTP.

1. Press **Fax** on the control panel.
2. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Fax Feature** and press **OK**.
4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Forward** and press **OK**.
5. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Server** and press **OK**.
6. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Receive Forward** and press **OK**.
7. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Forward** and press **OK**.  
To set the machine to print out a fax when fax forwarding has been completed, select **Forward & Print**.
8. Press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.  
Subsequent received faxes will be forwarded to the specified server.

## SETTING UP ADDRESS BOOK

You can set up **Address Book** with the fax numbers you use most frequently. Your machine provides you with the following features for setting up **Address Book**:

 Before beginning to store fax numbers, make sure that your machine is in Fax mode.

## Speed dial numbers

You can store up to 200 frequently-used fax numbers in speed dial numbers.

### Registering a speed dial number

1. Press **Fax** on the control panel.
2. Press **Address Book** on the control panel.
3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **New & Edit** and press **OK**.

4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Speed Dial** and press **OK**.
5. Enter a speed dial number between 0 and 199 and press **OK**.  
If an entry is already stored in the number you choose, the display shows the message to allow you to change it. To start over with another speed dial number, press **Back**.
6. Enter the name you want and press **OK**.  
For details on how to enter alphanumeric characters, see ""Entering characters using the number keypad" on page 50.
7. Enter the fax number you want and press **OK**.
8. Press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.

### Editing speed dial numbers

1. Press **Fax** on the control panel.
2. Press **Address Book** on the control panel.
3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **New & Edit** and press **OK**.
4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Speed Dial** and press **OK**.
5. Enter the speed dial number you want to edit and press **OK**.
6. Change the name and press **OK**.
7. Change the fax number and press **OK**.
8. Change the name and press **OK**.
9. Press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.

### Using speed dial numbers

When you are prompted to enter a destination number while sending a fax, enter the speed dial number at which you stored the number you want.

- For a one-digit (0-9) speed dial number, press and hold the corresponding digit button on the number keypad.
- For a two- or three-digit speed dial number, press the first digit button(s) and then hold down the last digit button.

You can also search through memory for an entry by pressing Address Book. (See "Searching Address Book for an entry" on page 87.)

## Group dial numbers

If you frequently send the same document to several destinations, you can group these destinations and set them under a group dial number. You can then use a group dial number to send a document to all of the destinations within the group. You can set up to 100 (0 through 99) group dial numbers using the destination's existing speed dial numbers.

### Registering a group dial number

1. Press **Fax** on the control panel.
2. Press **Address Book** on the control panel.
3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **New & Edit** and press **OK**.
4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Group Dial** and press **OK**.
5. Enter a group dial number between 0 and 99 and press **OK**.  
If an entry is already stored in the number you choose, the display shows the message to allow you to change it.
6. Enter the name you want and press **OK**.  
For details on how to enter alphanumeric characters, see ""Entering characters using the number keypad" on page 50.
7. Enter the first few letters of the speed dial's name you want.
8. Press the up/down arrow until the name and number you want highlights and press **OK**.
9. Press **OK** when **Yes** highlights at the **Add Another?** prompt.  
Repeat step 7 to include other speed dial numbers into the group.

10. When you have finished, press the left/right arrow to select **No** at the **Add Another?** prompt and press **OK**.
11. Press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.

### Editing a group dial number

1. Press **Fax** on the control panel.
2. Press **Address Book** on the control panel.
3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **New & Edit** and press **OK**.
4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Group Dial** and press **OK**.
5. Enter the group dial number you want to edit and press **OK**.
6. Enter the name you want to edit and press **OK**.
7. Enter the first few letters of the speed dial's name you want to add or delete.
8. Press the up/down arrow until the name and number you want highlights and press **OK**.  
If you entered a new speed dial number, **Add?** appears.  
If you enter a speed dial number stored in the group, **Delete?** appears.
9. Press **OK** to add or delete the number.
10. Press **OK** when **Yes** highlights to add or delete more numbers and repeat steps 7 and 8.
11. When you have finished, press the left/right arrow to select **No** at the **Another Number?** and press **OK**.
12. Press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.

### Using group dial numbers

To use a group dial entry, you need to search for and select it from memory.

When you are prompted to enter a fax number while sending a fax, press **Address Book**. See below.

## Searching Address Book for an entry

There are two ways to search for a number in memory. You can either scan from A to Z sequentially, or you can search by entering the first letters of the name associated with the number.

### Searching sequentially through the memory

1. Press **Fax** on the control panel.
2. Press **Address Book** on the control panel.
3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Search & Dial** and press **OK**.
4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Group Dial** and press **OK**.
5. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **All** and press **OK**.
6. Press the up/down arrow until the name and number you want highlights. You can search upwards or downwards through the entire memory in alphabetical order.

### Searching sequentially through the memory

1. Press **Fax** on the control panel.
2. Press **Address Book** on the control panel.
3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Search & Dial** and press **OK**.
4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Group Dial** and press **OK**.
5. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Search ID** and press **OK**.
6. Enter the first few letters of the name you want.
7. Press the up/down arrow until the group dial's name and number you want highlights.

### Deleting a Address Book for entry

1. Press **Fax** on the control panel.
2. Press **Address Book** on the control panel.
3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Delete** and press **OK**.
4. Press the up/down arrow until the deleting option you want highlights and press **OK**.
5. Press the up/down arrow until the searching method you want highlights and press **OK**.  
Select **Search All** to search for an entry by scanning through all entries in **Address Book**.  
Select **Search ID** to search for an entry by the first few letters of the name.
6. Press the up/down arrow until the name you want highlights and press **OK**.  
Or, enter the first letters. Press the up/down arrow until the name you want highlights and press **OK**.
7. Press **OK** when **Yes** highlights to confirm the deletion.
8. Press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.

### Printing Address Book

You can check your **Address Book** settings by printing a list.

1. Press **Fax** on the control panel.
2. Press **Address Book** on the control panel.
3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Print** and press **OK**.  
The machine begins printing.

## PRINTING SENT FAX REPORT AUTOMATICALLY

---

You can set the machine to print a report with detailed information about the previous 50 communication operations, including time and dates.

1. Press **Fax** on the control panel.
2. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Fax Setup** and press **OK**.
4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Auto Report** and press **OK**.
5. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **On** and press **OK**.
6. Press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.

# using usb memory device

This chapter explains how to use a USB memory device with your machine.

## This chapter includes:

- About USB memory device
- Scanning to an USB memory device
- Printing from a USB memory device
- backing up data
- managing usb memory

## ABOUT USB MEMORY DEVICE

USB memory devices are available with a variety of memory capacities to give you more room for storing documents, presentations, music and videos, high resolution photographs, or whatever other files you want to store or move.

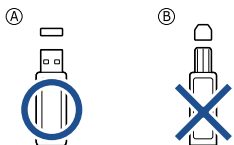
You can do the following on your machine using an USB memory device:

- Scan documents and save them on an USB memory device.
- Print data stored on an USB memory device.
- Format the USB memory device.

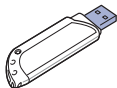
Your machine supports USB memory devices with FAT16/FAT32 and sector size of 512 bytes.

Check your USB memory device's file system from your dealer.

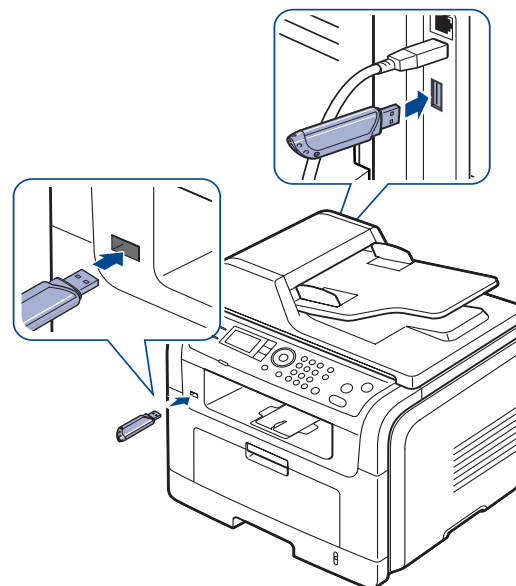
You must use only an authorized USB memory device with an A plug type connector.



Use only an USB memory device with metal-shielded connector.



Insert a USB memory device into the USB memory port on your machine.



- Do not remove the USB memory device while it is in use. The machine warranty does not cover damage caused by user's misuse.
- If your USB memory device has certain features, such as security settings and password settings, your machine may not automatically detect it. For details about these features, see USB memory device's User's Guide.

## SCANNING TO AN USB MEMORY DEVICE

You can scan a document and save the scanned image onto an USB memory device. There are two ways of doing this: you can scan to the device using the default settings, or you can customize your own scan settings. When you scan a document, the machine uses the default settings such as the resolution. You can also customize your own scan setting.

### Scanning

1. Insert a USB memory device into the USB memory port on your machine.
2. Load originals face up into the document feeder, or place a single original face down on the scanner glass..
3. Press **Scan/Email** and press **OK**.
4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Scan To USB** and press **OK**.  
Your machine begins scanning the original, and then asks if you want to

scan another page.

5. To scan another page, press the left/right arrow to highlight **Yes** and press **OK**. Load an original and press **Start**.  
Otherwise, press the left/right arrow to highlight **No** and press **OK**.
6. After scanning is complete, you can remove the USB memory device from the machine.

## Customizing Scan to USB

You can specify image size, file format, or color mode for each scanning to USB job.

1. Press **Scan/Email** on the control panel.
2. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Scan Feature** and press **OK**.
4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **USB Feature** and press **OK**.
5. Press the up/down arrow to highlight the setting you want and press **OK**.

You can set the following options:

- **Scan Size:** Sets the image size
  - **Original Type:** Sets the original document's type
  - **Resolution:** Sets the image resolution
  - **Scan Color:** Sets the color mode. If you select **Mono** in this option, you cannot select **JPEG** in **Scan Format**.
  - **Scan Format:** Sets the file format in which the image is to be saved. When you select **TIFF** or **PDF**, you can select to scan multiple pages. If you select **JPEG** in this option, you cannot select **Mono** in **Scan Color**.
6. Press the up/down arrow until the desired status highlights and press **OK**.
  7. Repeat steps 5 and 6 to set other setting options.
  8. When you have finished, press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.
- You can change the default scan settings. For details, see "Changing the default scan settings" on page 77.

## PRINTING FROM A USB MEMORY DEVICE

You can directly print files stored on a USB memory device. You can print TIFF, BMP, JPEG, and PRN files.

Direct Print option supported file types:

- **PRN:** Only files created by provided driver with your machine are compatible. PRN files can be created by selecting the **Print to file** check box when you print a document. The document will be saved as a PRN file, rather than printed on paper. Only PRN files created in this fashion can be printed directly from USB memory device. (See "Printing to a file (PRN)" on page 65.)



If you print PRN files created from other machine, the printout would be different .

- **BMP:** BMP Uncompressed
- **TIFF:** TIFF 6.0 Baseline
- **JPEG:** JPEG Baseline
- **PDF:** PDF 1.4 and below

To print a document from a USB memory device:

1. Insert a USB memory device into the USB memory port on your machine. If one has already been inserted, press **Direct USB**.
2. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **USB Print** and press **OK**.  
Your machine automatically detects the device and reads data stored on it.

3. Press the up/down arrow until the folder or file you want highlights and press **OK**.  
If you see **+** in the front of a folder name, there are one or more files or folders in the selected folder.
4. If you selected a file, skip to the next step.  
If you selected a folder, press the up/down arrow until the file you want highlights and press **OK**.
5. Press the up/down arrow to select the number of copies to be printed or enter the number.
6. Press **OK** or **Start** to start printing the selected file.  
After printing the file, the display asks if you want to print another job.
7. To print another document, press the left/right arrow to highlight **Yes** and press **OK**. Repeat from step 3.  
Otherwise, press the left/right arrow to highlight **No** and press **OK**.
8. Press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.

## BACKING UP DATA

Data in the machine's memory can be accidentally erased due to power failure or storage failure. Backup helps you protect your Address Book entries and the system settings by storing them as backup files on a USB memory device.

### Backing up data

1. Insert a USB memory device into the USB memory port on your machine.
2. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **System Setup** and press **OK**.
4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Machine Setup** and press **OK**.
5. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Export Setting** and press **OK**.
6. Press the up/down arrow until the option you want highlights.
  - **Address Book:** Backs up all Address Book entries.
  - **Setup Data:** Backs up all system settings.
7. Press **OK** to begin backing up the data.  
The data is backed up to the USB memory.
8. Press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.


### Restoring data

1. Insert a USB memory device on which the backup data is stored in to the USB memory port.
2. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **System Setup** and press **OK**.
4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Machine Setup** and press **OK**.
5. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Import Setting** and press **OK**.
6. Press the up/down arrow until the data type you want highlights and press **OK**.
7. Press the up/down arrow until the file containing the data you want to restore highlights and press **OK**.
8. To restore the backup file to the machine, press the left/right arrow to highlight **Yes** and press **OK**.
9. Press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.

## MANAGING USB MEMORY

You can delete image files stored on a USB memory device one by one or all at once by reformatting the device.



 After deleting files or reformatting a USB memory device, files cannot be restored. Therefore, confirm that you no longer need the data before deleting it.

## Deleting an image file

1. Insert a USB memory device into the USB memory port on your machine.
2. Press **Direct USB** on the control panel.
3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **File Manage** and press **OK**.
4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Delete** and press **OK**.
5. Press the up/down arrow until the folder or file you want highlights and press **OK**.



If you see + in the front of a folder name, there are one or more files or folders in the selected folder.

If you selected a file, the display shows the size of the file for about 2 seconds. Go to the next step.

If you selected a folder, press the up/down arrow until the file you want to delete highlights and press **OK**.

6. To delete file, press the up/down arrow to highlight **Yes** and press **OK**.
7. Press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.

## Formatting a USB memory device

1. Insert a USB memory device into the USB memory port on your machine.
2. Press **Direct USB** on the control panel.
3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **File Manage** and press **OK**.
4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Format** and press **OK**.
5. To format USB memory device, Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Yes** and press **OK**.
6. Press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.

## Viewing the USB memory status

1. Insert a USB memory device into the USB memory port on your machine.
2. Press **Direct USB** on the control panel.
3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Check Space** and press **OK**.  
The available memory space appears on the display.
4. Press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.




# machine status and advanced feature

This chapter explains how to browse the current status of your machine, and the method of setting for the advanced machine setup. Read this chapter carefully in order to use your machine's diverse features.

This chapter includes:

- Fax setup
- Copy setup
- Scan setup
- Printing a report
- Clearing memory
- Network
- Menu overview

 Some menus may not appear in the display depending on options or models. If so, it is not applicable to your machine.

## FAX SETUP

### Changing the fax setup options

Your machine provides you with various user-selectable options for setting up the fax system. You can change the default settings for your preferences and needs.

To change the fax setup options:

1. Press **Fax**.
2. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Fax Setup** and press **OK**.
4. Press the up/down arrow until the fax setup item you want highlights and press **OK**.
5. Press the up/down arrow until the option you want highlights and press **OK**.
6. Press the up/down arrow until the desired status appears or enter the value for the option you have selected, and press **OK**.
7. If necessary, repeat steps 4 through 6.
8. Press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.

### Sending

| OPTION       | DESCRIPTION                                                                                                                                                                   |
|--------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Redial Times | You can specify the number of redial attempts. If you enter 0, the machine will not redial.                                                                                   |
| Redial Term  | Your machine can automatically redial a remote fax machine if it was busy. You can set an interval between attempts.                                                          |
| Prefix Dial  | You can set a prefix of up to five digits. This number dials before any automatic dial number is started. It is useful for accessing a PABX exchange.                         |
| ECM Mode     | This mode helps with poor line quality and makes sure any faxes you send are sent smoothly to any other ECM-equipped fax machine. Sending a fax using ECM may take more time. |


| OPTION      | DESCRIPTION                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Send Report | You can set your machine to print a confirmation report showing whether a transmission was successful, how many pages were sent, and more. The available options are <b>On</b> , <b>Off</b> , and <b>On-Error</b> , which prints only when a transmission is not successful.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Image TCR   | This function allows users to know what fax messages have been sent by showing sent messages in the transmission report. The first page of the message is turned into an image file than is printed on the transmission report so the users can see what messages have been sent. However, you can not use this function when sending fax without saving the data in the memory.                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Dial Mode   | This setting may not be available depending on your country. If you cannot reach this option, your machine does not support this feature. You can set the dial mode for your machine to either tone dialling or pulse dialling. If you have a public telephone system or a private branch exchnage(PBX) system, you may need to select <b>Pulse</b> . Contact your local telephone company if you are not sure which dial mode to use. If you select <b>Pulse</b> , some phone system features might not be available. It can also take longer to dial a fax or phone number. |

### Receiving

| OPTION         | DESCRIPTION                                                                                                                                             |
|----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Receive Mode   | You can select the default fax receiving mode. For details on receiving faxes in each mode, see "Changing the receive modes" on page 83.                |
| Ring to Answer | You can specify the number of times the machine rings before answering an incoming call.                                                                |
| Stamp RCV Name | This option allows the machine to automatically print the page number, and the date and time of reception at the bottom of each page of a received fax. |

| OPTION                | DESCRIPTION                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Rcv Start Code</b> | This code allows you to initiate fax reception from an extension phone plugged into the EXT socket on the back of the machine. If you pick up the extension phone and hear fax tones, enter the code. It is preset to *9* at the factory.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>Auto Reduction</b> | <p>When receiving a fax containing pages as long as or longer than the paper loaded in the paper tray, the machine can reduce the size of the original to fit the size of the paper loaded in the machine.</p> <p>Turn on this feature if you want to automatically reduce an incoming page.</p> <p>With this feature set to <b>Off</b>, the machine cannot reduce the original to fit onto one page. The original will be divided and printed in actual size on two or more pages.</p>                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>Discard Size</b>   | <p>When receiving a fax containing pages as long as or longer than the paper in your machine, you can set the machine to discard a specific length from the end of the received fax. The machine will print the received fax on one or more sheets of paper, minus the data that would have been on the specified discard segment.</p> <p>When the received fax contains pages larger than the paper in your machine, and <b>Auto Reduction</b> has been turned on, the machine will reduce the fax to fit on the existing paper, and nothing will be discarded.</p>                                                                       |
| <b>Junk Fax Setup</b> | <p>This setting may not be available depending on your country. Using this feature, the system will not accept faxes sent from remote stations whose numbers are stored in the memory as junk fax numbers. This feature is useful for blocking any unwanted faxes.</p> <p>When you turn on this feature, you can access the following options to set junk fax numbers.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Add:</b> Allows you to set up to 10 fax numbers.</li> <li>• <b>Delete:</b> Allows you to delete the desired junk fax number. If you select <b>Delete All</b>, Allows you to delete all junk fax numbers.</li> </ul> |
| <b>DRPD Mode</b>      | This mode enables a user to use a single telephone line to answer several different telephone numbers. In this menu, you can set the machine to recognize which ring patterns to answer. For details about this feature, see "Receiving faxes using DRPD mode" on page 84.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>Duplex Print</b>   | Set this duplex feature to save paper. When the machine prints the received fax data, it prints them on both sides of the paper. For details about this feature, see "Printing received faxes on both sides of the paper" on page 84.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |

## Change Default

| OPTION            | DESCRIPTION                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Resolution</b> | <p>Changing the resolution setting affects the appearance of the received document.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Standard:</b> Originals with normal sized characters.</li> <li>• <b>Fine:</b> Originals containing small characters or thin lines or originals printed using a dot-matrix printer.</li> <li>• <b>Super Fine:</b> Originals containing extremely fine detail. <b>Super Fine</b> mode is enabled only if the machine with which you are communicating also supports the <b>Super Fine</b> resolution.</li> </ul> <p> For memory transmission, <b>Super Fine</b> mode is not available. The resolution setting is automatically changed to <b>Fine</b>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When your machine is set to <b>Super Fine</b> resolution and the fax machine with which you are communicating does not support <b>Super Fine</b> resolution, the machine transmits using the highest resolution mode supported by the other fax machine.</li> <li>• <b>Photo Fax:</b> Originals containing shades of gray or photographs.</li> <li>• <b>Color Fax:</b> Originals with colors. Sending a color fax is enabled only if the machine with which you are communicating supports color fax reception and you send the fax manually. In this mode, memory transmission is not available.</li> </ul> |
| <b>Darkness</b>   | You can select the default contrast mode to fax your originals lighter or darker.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |

## Auto Report

You can set the machine to print a report with detailed information about the previous 50 communication operations, including time and dates.

For further details, see "Printing sent fax report automatically" on page 88.

## COPY SETUP

### Changing the copy setup options

For copy output, you can set up several options in advance.

1. Press **Copy** on the control panel.
2. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Copy Setup** and press **OK**.
4. Press the up/down arrow until the copy setup item you want highlights and press **OK**.
5. Press the up/down arrow until the setup option you want highlights and press **OK**.
6. Press the up/down arrow until the setting you want highlights and press **OK**.

- 7. Repeat steps 4 through 6, as needed.
- 8. Press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.

Duplex Print

You can set the machine to print copies on both sides of paper.  
For further details, see "Copying on both sides of originals" on page 72.

Change Default

| OPTION         | DESCRIPTION                                                                                                                    |
|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| #of Copies     | You can enter the number of copies using the number keypad.                                                                    |
| Copy Collation | You can set the machine to sort the copy job.<br>For further details, see "Deciding the form of copy output" on page 72.       |
| Reduce/Enlarge | Reduces or enlarges the size of a copied image.                                                                                |
| Darkness       | Adjusts the brightness level to make a copy that is easier to read, when the original contains faint markings and dark images. |
| Original Type  | Improves the copy quality by selecting the document type for the current copy job.                                             |

SCAN SETUP

Changing the scan setup options


To avoid having to customize the scan settings for each job, you can set up default scan settings for each scan type.

- 1. Press **Scan/Email**.
- 2. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
- 3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Scan Setup** and press **OK**.
- 4. Press **OK** when **Change Default** highlights .
- 5. Press the up/down until the scan type you want highlights and press **OK**.
- 6. Press the up/down until the scan setting option you want highlights and press **OK**.



Setting option is the same for each scan type.

- 7. Press the up/down arrow until the desired status highlights and press **OK**.
- 8. Repeat steps 6 and 7 to set other setting options.
- 9. When you have finished, press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.

| OPTION        | DESCRIPTION                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Scan Size     | Sets the image size.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Original Type | Sets the original document's type.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Resolution    | Sets the image resolution.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Scan Color    | Sets the color mode.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Scan Format   | Sets the file format in which the image is to be saved. If you select TIFF or PDF, you can select to scan multiple pages.<br> Depending on the selected scan type, this option may not appear. |

PRINTING A REPORT

You can print a report on the machine's configuration or font list, etc.

- 1. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
- 2. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **System Setup** and press **OK**.
- 3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Reports** and press **OK**.
- 4. Press the up/down arrow until the report or list you want to print highlights and press **OK**.  
To print all reports and lists, select **All Report**.
- 5. Press **OK** when **Yes** appears to confirm printing.  
The selected information prints out.

| OPTION         | DESCRIPTION                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Configuration  | This list shows the status of the user-selectable options. You may print this list to confirm your changes after changing settings.                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Address Book   | This list shows all of the email addresses currently stored in the machine's memory.                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Send Report    | This report shows the fax number, the number of pages, the elapsed time of the job, the communication mode, and the communication results for a particular fax job.<br>You can set up your machine to automatically print a transmission confirmation report after each fax job. (See "Sending" on page 92.) |
| Sent Report    | This report shows information on the faxes and emails you have recently sent.<br>You can set the machine to automatically print this report every 50 communications. (See "Sending" on page 92.)                                                                                                             |
| Fax Rcv Report | This report shows information on the faxes you have recently received.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Schedule Jobs  | This list shows the documents currently stored for delayed faxes along with the starting time and type of each operation.                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| JunkFax Report | This list shows the fax numbers specified as junk fax numbers. To add or delete numbers to or from this list, access the Junk Fax Setup menu. (See "Receiving" on page 92.)                                                                                                                                  |
| Network Info.  | This list shows information on your machine's network connection and configuration.                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| User Auth List | This list shows authorized users who are allowed to use the email function.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |




You can also print the machine's status information and browse status with SyncThru™ Web Service. Open the Web browser on your networked computer and type the IP address of your machine. When SyncThru™ Web Service opens, click **Information > Print information**.

CLEARING MEMORY

You can selectively clear information stored in your machine's memory.

- 1. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
- 2. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **System Setup** and press **OK**.

- 3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Clear Setting** and press **OK**.
- 4. Press the up/down arrow until the item you want to clear highlights and press **OK**.
- 5. Press **OK** when **Yes** highlights to confirm clearing.
- 6. Repeat steps 4 through 5 to clear another item.
- 7. Press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.

 Some menus may not appear in the display depending on options or models. If so, it is not applicable to your machine.

| OPTION         | DESCRIPTION                                                                                     |
|----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| All settings   | Clears all of the data stored in memory and resets all of your settings to the factory default. |
| Fax Setup      | Restores all of the fax options to the factory default.                                         |
| Copy Setup     | Restores all of the copy options to the factory default.                                        |
| Scan Setup     | Restores all of the scan options to the factory default.                                        |
| System Setup   | Restores all of the system options to the factory default.                                      |
| Network Setup  | Restores all of the network options to the factory default.                                     |
| Address Book   | Clears all of the email address entries stored in memory.                                       |
| Sent Report    | Clears all records of sent faxes and emails.                                                    |
| Fax Rcv Report | Clears all records of received faxes.                                                           |

NETWORK

You may set up the network with the machine's touch screen. Before doing that, you must have the relevant information concerning the type of network protocols and computer system you use. If you are not sure which setting to use, contact your network administrator to configure this machine to the network.

- 1. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
- 2. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Network** and press **OK**.
- 3. Press the up/down arrow until the setup option you want highlights and press **OK**.
- 4. Press the up/down arrow until the setting you want highlights and press **OK**.
- 5. Repeat steps 3 through 4, as needed.
- 6. Press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.


| OPTION         | DESCRIPTION                                                                          |
|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| TCP/IP         | Select appropriate protocol and configure parameters to use the network environment. |
| Ethernet Speed | Configure the network transmission speed.                                            |

| OPTION                | DESCRIPTION                                                                         |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Wireless <sup>a</sup> | Configure the wireless network environments.                                        |
| Clear Settings        | Reverts the network settings to the default values.                                 |
| Network Info.         | This list shows information on your machine's network connection and configuration. |

a. This menu only appears when an optional wireless network interface has been installed.

## MENU OVERVIEW

The control panel provides access to various menus to set up the machine or use the machine's functions. These menus can be accessed by pressing **Menu**.

 Some menus may not appear in the display depending on options or models. If so, it is not applicable to your machine.

| ITEMS        | OPTION                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|--------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Fax Feature  | Darkness<br>Resolution<br>Multi Send<br>Delay Send<br>Priority Send<br>Forward<br>Secure Receive<br>Add Page<br>Cancel Job                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Fax Setup    | Sending<br>Redial Times<br>Redial Term<br>Prefix Dial<br>ECM Mode<br>Send Report<br>Image TCR<br>Dial Mode<br>Receiving<br>Receive Mode<br>Ring to Answer<br>Stamp RCV Name<br>Rcv Start Code<br>Auto Reduction<br>Discard Size<br>Junk Fax Setup<br>DRPD Mode<br>Duplex Print<br>Change Default<br>Resolution<br>Darkness<br>Auto Report |
| Copy Feature | Reduce/Enlarge<br>Darkness<br>Original Type<br>Layout                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Copy Setup   | Duplex Print<br>Change Default<br># of Copies<br>Copy Collation<br>Reduce/Enlarge<br>Darkness<br>Original Type                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |

| ITEMS        | OPTION                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|--------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Scan Feature | USB Feature<br>Scan Size<br>Original Type<br>Resolution<br>Scan Color<br>Scan Format<br>Email Feature<br>Scan Size<br>Original Type<br>Resolution<br>Scan Color<br>FTP Feature<br>Scan Size<br>Original Type<br>Resolution<br>Scan Color<br>SMB Feature<br>Scan Size<br>Original Type<br>Resolution<br>Scan Color                                                                |
| Scan Setup   | Change Default<br>USB Default<br>Scan Size<br>Original Type<br>Resolution<br>Scan Color<br>Scan Format<br>Email Default<br>Scan Size<br>Original Type<br>Resolution<br>Scan Color<br>Scan Format<br>FTP Default<br>Scan Size<br>Original Type<br>Resolution<br>Scan Color<br>Scan Format<br>SMB Default<br>Scan Size<br>Original Type<br>Resolution<br>Scan Color<br>Scan Format |

| ITEMS        | OPTION           |
|--------------|------------------|
| System Setup | Machine Setup    |
|              | Machine ID       |
|              | Machine Fax No.  |
|              | Date & Time      |
|              | Clock Mode       |
|              | Language         |
|              | Default Mode     |
|              | Power Save       |
|              | Scan Power Save  |
|              | Timeout          |
|              | Job Timeout      |
|              | Altitude Adjust  |
|              | Auto Continue    |
|              | Auto Tray Switch |
|              | Toner Save       |
|              | Import Setting   |
|              | Export Setting   |
|              | Paper Setup      |
|              | Paper Size       |
|              | Paper Type       |
|              | Paper Source     |
|              | Tray Confirm     |
|              | Sound/Volume     |
|              | Key Sound        |
|              | Alarm Sound      |
|              | Speaker          |
|              | Ringer           |
|              | Reports          |
|              | All Report       |
|              | Configuration    |
|              | Address Book     |
|              | Send Report      |
|              | Sent Report      |
|              | Fax Rcv Report   |
|              | Schedule Jobs    |
|              | JunkFax Report   |
|              | Network Info.    |
|              | User Auth List   |
|              | Maintenance      |
|              | CLR Empty Msg    |
|              | Supplies Life    |
|              | Toner Low Alert  |
|              | Serial Number    |
|              | Paper Stacking   |
|              | Clear Setting    |
|              | All Settings     |
|              | Fax Setup        |
|              | Copy Setup       |
|              | Scan Setup       |
|              | System Setup     |
|              | Network Setup    |
|              | Address Book     |
|              | Sent Report      |
|              | Fax Rcv Report   |

| ITEMS   | OPTION         |
|---------|----------------|
| Network | TCP/IP         |
|         | DHCP           |
|         | BOOTP          |
|         | Static         |
|         | IP Address     |
|         | Primary DNS    |
|         | Secondary DNS  |
|         | Ethernet Speed |
|         | Auto           |
|         | 10M Half       |
|         | 10M Full       |
|         | 100M Half      |
|         | 100M Full      |
|         | Wireless       |
|         | WLAN Setting   |
|         | Wizard         |
|         | Custom         |
|         | WLAN Default   |
|         | WLAN Signal    |
|         | Clear Settings |
|         | Network Info.  |





# management tools

This chapter introduces management tools provided to help you make full use of your machine.

**This chapter includes:**

- Introducing useful management tools
- Using SyncThru™ Web Service
- Using the Smart Panel program

## INTRODUCING USEFUL MANAGEMENT TOOLS

The programs below help you to use your machine conveniently.

- "Using SyncThru™ Web Service" on page 99.
- "Using the Smart Panel program" on page 100.
- "Smarthru Office" on page 101.
- "Using the Linux Unified Driver Configurator" on page 102.

## USING SYNCTHRU™ WEB SERVICE

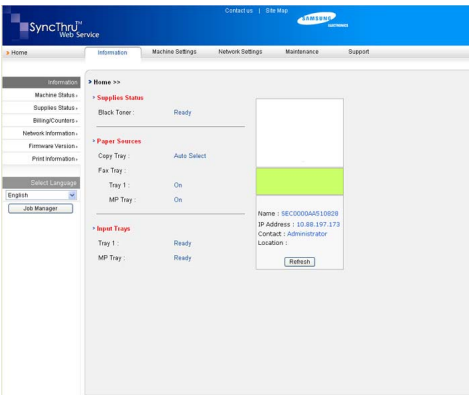
If you have connected your machine to a network and set up TCP/IP network parameters correctly, you can manage the machine via SyncThru™ Web Service, an embedded web server. Use SyncThru™ Web Service to:

- View the machine's device information and check its current status.
- Change TCP/IP parameters and set up other network parameters.
- Change printer preference.
- Set the email notifications advising of the machine's status.
- Get support for using the machine.

### To access SyncThru™ Web Service:

1. Access a web browser, such as Internet Explorer, from Windows.  
Enter the machine IP address (http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx) in the address field and press the Enter key or click **Go**.
2. Your machine's embedded website opens.

### SyncThru™ Web Service overview



- **Information tab:** This tab gives you general information about your machine. You can check things, such as the machine's IP address, remaining amount of toner, ethernet information, firmware version, and

- Smarthru Office
- Using the Linux Unified Driver Configurator

so on. You can also print reports such as an error report and so on.

- **Machine Settings tab:** This tab allows you to set options provided by your machine.
- **Network Settings tab:** This tab allows you to view and change the network environment. You can set things, such as TCP/IP, enabling Ether Talk and so on.
- **Maintenance tab:** This tab allows you to maintain your machine by upgrading firmware and setting security information.
- **Support tab:** This tab allows you to set contact information for sending email. You can also connect to SEC website or download drivers by selecting Link.

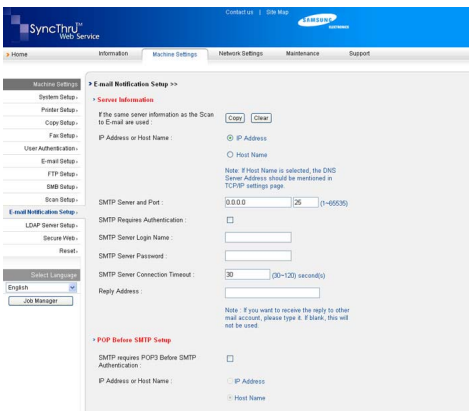
### E-mail Notification Setup

You can receive emails about your machine's status by setting this option. By setting information such as IP address, host name, e-mail address and SMTP server information, the machine status (toner cartridge shortage or machine error) will be sent to a certain person's e-mail automatically. This option may be used more frequently by a machine administrator.

1. Start a web browser, such as Internet Explorer, from Windows.  
Enter the machine IP address (http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx) in the address field and press the Enter key or click Go.
2. Your machine's embedded website opens.
3. From the **Machine Settings**, select **E-mail Notification Setup**.
4. Set required settings.

Set SMTP server information and other settings to use E-mail notification function.

After setting the network environment, select the recipient list. And just by clicking a radio button, you can select in what case you want to receive an alert.

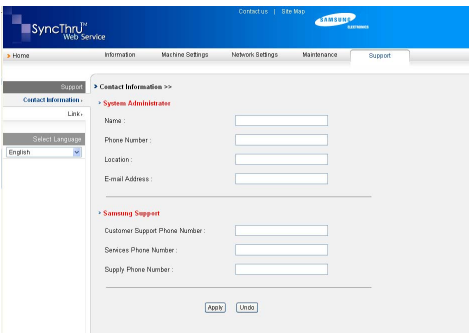


5. Click **Apply**.

## Setting the contact information

Set the machine administrator information and this setting is necessary to use E-mail notification option.

1. Start a web browser, such as Internet Explorer, from Windows.  
Enter the machine IP address (http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx) in the address field and press the Enter key or click Go.
2. Your machine's embedded website opens.
3. Select **Support**.
4. Enter the name of machine administrator, phone number, location or E-mail address..



5. Click **Apply**.



If the firewall is activated, the E-mail may not be sent successfully. In that case, contact the a network administrator.

## USING THE SMART PANEL PROGRAM

Smart Panel is a program that monitors and informs you of the machine status, and allows you to customize the machine's settings. Smart Panel is installed automatically when you install the machine software.



- To use this program, you need the following system requirements:
- Windows. Check for windows operating system(s) compatible with your machine. (See "System requirements" on page 33.)
  - Mac OS X 10.3 or higher
  - Linux. Check for Linux systems that are compatible with your machine. (See "System requirements" on page 33.)
  - Internet Explorer version 5.0 or higher for flash animation in HTML Help.

If you need to know the exact model name of your machine, you can check the supplied software CD.

## Understanding Smart Panel

If an error occurs while printing, you can check the error from the Smart Panel.

You can also launch Smart Panel manually. Double-click the Smart Panel icon on the Windows task bar (in Windows), or Notification Area (in Linux). You can also click it on the status bar (in Mac OS X).

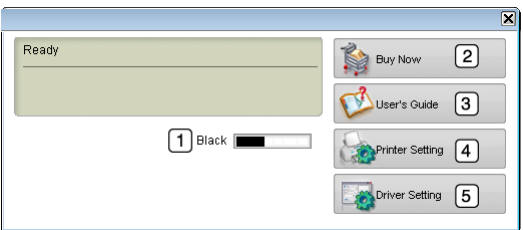
|           |  |                                    |
|-----------|--|------------------------------------|
| Windows   |  | Double-click this icon in Windows. |
| Macintosh |  | Click this icon in Mac OS X.       |
| Linux     |  | Click this icon in Linux.          |

Or, if you are a Windows user, you can launch it from the **Start** menu, select **Programs** or **All Programs** > your printer driver name > Smart Panel.



- If you have already installed more than one Samsung machine, first select the correct machine model you want in order to access the corresponding Smart Panel.  
Right-click (in Windows or Linux) or click (in Mac OS X) the Smart Panel icon and select your machine.
- The Smart Panel window and its contents shown in this user's guide may differ depending on the machine or operating system in use.

The Smart Panel program displays the current status of the machine, the level of toner remaining in the toner cartridge(s), and various other types of information. You can also change settings.



|          |                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|----------|------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>1</b> | <b>Toner Level</b>     | View the level of toner remaining in the toner cartridge(s). The machine and the number of toner cartridge(s) shown in the above window may differ depending on the machine in use. Some machines do not have this feature.                              |
| <b>2</b> | <b>Buy Now</b>         | Order replacement toner cartridge(s) online.                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>3</b> | <b>User's Guide</b>    | View User's Guide.<br>This button changes to <b>Troubleshooting Guide</b> when error occurs. You can directly open troubleshooting section in the user's guide.                                                                                          |
| <b>4</b> | <b>Printer Setting</b> | Configure various machine settings in the Printer Settings Utility window. Some machines do not have this feature.<br>If you connect your machine to a network, the SyncThru™ Web Service window appears instead of the Printer Settings Utility window. |
| <b>5</b> | <b>Driver Setting</b>  | Set all of the machine options you need in the <b>Printer Preferences</b> window. This feature is available only for Windows. (See "Opening printing preferences" on page 61.)                                                                           |

## Opening the Troubleshooting Guide

Find solutions for problems by using the **Troubleshooting Guide**. Right-click (in Windows or Linux) or click (in Mac OS X) the Smart Panel icon and select **Troubleshooting Guide**.

## Changing the Smart Panel Program Settings

Right-click (in Windows or Linux) or click (in Mac OS X) the Smart Panel icon and select **Options**. Select the settings you want from the **Options** window.

## SMARTHRU OFFICE

The supplied software CD provides you with SmarThru Office. SmarThru Office offers you convenient features to use with your machine.

### Starting SmarThru Office

Follow the steps below to start SmarThru Office:

1. Make sure that your machine and computer are turned on and properly connected to each other.
2. Once you have installed SmarThru Office, you will see the SmarThru Office icon on your desktop.
3. Double-click the SmarThru Office icon.




This menu displays direct buttons for some features. The direct buttons include: **Categories**, **Binder**, **Life Cycle**, **Scan** and **OCR**, **Fix and Enhance**, and **Samsung Website**. You can disable this menu by checking “**Do not show this diaglog again**”.



4. The SmarThru Office appears.

For more information about SmarThru Office, click **Help > SmarThru Office help**. The **SmarThru Office Help** window appears; you can view on screen help supplied on the SmarThru program.



Click the SmarThru icon  in the tray area of the Windows taskbar to activate the SmarThru Office launcher.





Follow the steps below to uninstall SmarThru Office. Before you begin the uninstall, ensure that all applications are closed on your computer.

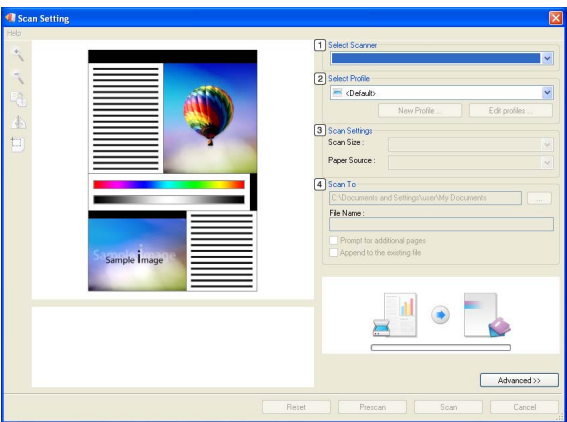
- a) From the **Start** menu, select **Programs** or **All Programs**.
- b) Select SmarThru Office, and then select **Uninstall SmarThru Office**.
- c) When your computer asks you to confirm your selection, read the statement and click **OK**.
- d) Click **Finish**.

## Using SmarThru Office

### Scanning

1. Click the SmarThru icon  in the tray area of the windows taskbar to activate the SmarThru Office launcher.
2. Click the scanning icon  to open the scanning window.

3. **Scan Setting** window opens.





|   |                       |                                                                                                           |
|---|-----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | <b>Select Scanner</b> | Allows you to select between the Local or Network scanner.                                                |
| 2 | <b>Select Profile</b> | Allows you to save settings frequently used for future use. Click <b>New Profile</b> to save the setting. |
| 3 | <b>Scan Settings</b>  | Allows you to customize settings for <b>Scan Size</b> and <b>Paper Source</b> .                           |
| 4 | <b>Scan To</b>        | Allows you to customize settings for <b>File Name</b> and location to send scanned data.                  |



Click **Advanced** button to set more scan options.



4. Set scan settings and click **Scan**.

### Printing

1. Click the SmarThru icon  in the tray area of the Windows taskbar to activate the SmarThru Office launcher.
2. Click the printing icon  to open the printing window..
3. Select the file you want to print.
4. Select the machine you want to use for printing.
5. Click **Print** to start the job.

### Sending a file via fax

You can fax while working on SmarThru Office.

1. Click the SmarThru icon  in the tray area of the Windows taskbar to activate the SmarThru Office launcher.
2. Click the faxing icon  to open the faxing window.
3. Set fax settings and click **Send Fax**.
  - **Select Fax Machine:** Choose whether the machine is connected locally or via network. If the machine is in network, click **Browse** to insert the IP address and other information.
  - **Pages Ready:** Select file you want to fax. Click **Add**.
  - **Recipients:** Click **Add** to enter the fax number.
  - **Cover page:** If you need a cover page, enter the values for the options. If not, click **Skip Cover Page**.
  - **Fax Settings:** If the original document is faded or not vivid, click **Fine**. In this case, the fax speed could be low.


**Sending a file to FTP**

You can upload files to an FTP server while working on SmarThru Office.

1. Double-click the SmarThru Office icon on your desktop.
2. Select the file to send to FTP.
3. Select **File > Send to > Send By FTP**.
4. **Send By FTP** window opens.
5. Add your file and click **Upload**.

**Email**

You can send email while working on SmarThru Office.

 You need an email client program, such as Outlook Express, to send email in SmarThru Office. Procedure for sending email may differ depending on email client program you are using.

1. Double-click the SmarThru Office icon on your desktop.
2. Select the file to send to Email.
3. Select **File > Send to> Send By E-mail**.
4. An email client opens.
5. Type in necessary information and send your email.

**USING THE LINUX UNIFIED DRIVER CONFIGURATOR**

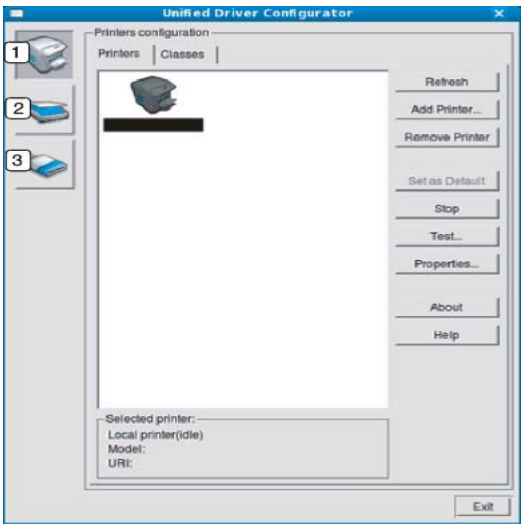
The supplied software CD provides you with the Linux Unified Driver package for using your machine with a Linux computer.

Unified Driver Configurator is a tool primarily intended for configuring machine devices. Since a machine device combines the printer and scanner, the Linux Unified Driver Configurator provides options logically grouped for printer and scanner functions. There is also a special machine port option responsible for the regulation of access to a machine printer and scanner via a single I/O channel. Also, you can monitor a number of machine devices via fast ECP parallel ports and USB simultaneously.


After the driver is installed on your Linux system, the Linux Unified Driver Configurator icon will automatically be created on your desktop.

**Opening the Unified Driver Configurator**

1. Double-click the **Unified Driver Configurator** on the desktop.  
You can also click the **Startup** Menu icon and select **Samsung Unified Driver > Unified Driver Configurator**.
2. Click each button on the left to switch to the corresponding configuration window.



- |   |                               |
|---|-------------------------------|
| 1 | <b>Printers Configuration</b> |
| 2 | <b>Scanners Configuration</b> |
| 3 | <b>Ports Configuration</b>    |

 To use the on screen help, click **Help**.

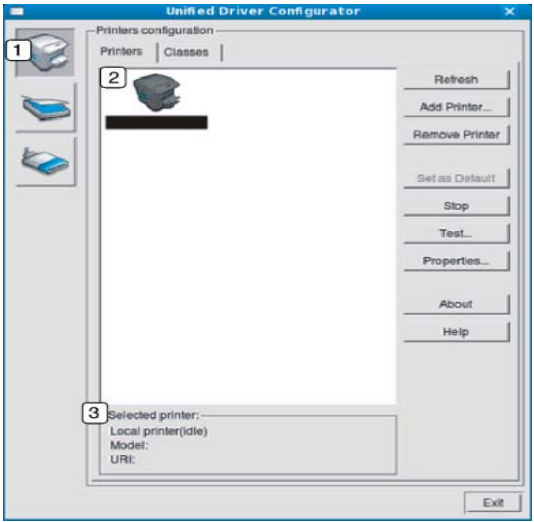
3. After changing the configurations, click **Exit** to close the Unified Driver Configurator.

**Printers configuration**

**Printers configuration** has the two tabs: **Printers** and **Classes**.

**Printers tab**

View the current system’s printer configuration by clicking on the machine icon button on the left side of the Unified Driver Configurator window.



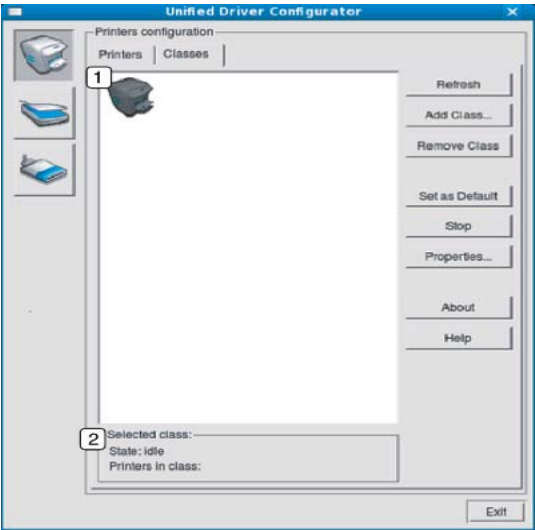
- |   |                                                       |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Switches to <b>Printers configuration</b> .           |
| 2 | Shows all of the installed machine.                   |
| 3 | Shows the status, model name and URI of your machine. |

- The printer control buttons are, as follows:
- **Refresh:** Renews the available machines list.
  - **Add Printer:** Allows you to add a new machines.

- **Remove Printer:** Removes the selected machine.
- **Set as Default:** Sets the current selected machine as a default machine.
- **Stop/Start:** Stops/starts the machine.
- **Test:** Allows you to print a test page to ensure the machine is working properly.
- **Properties:** Allows you to view and change the printer properties.

Classes tab

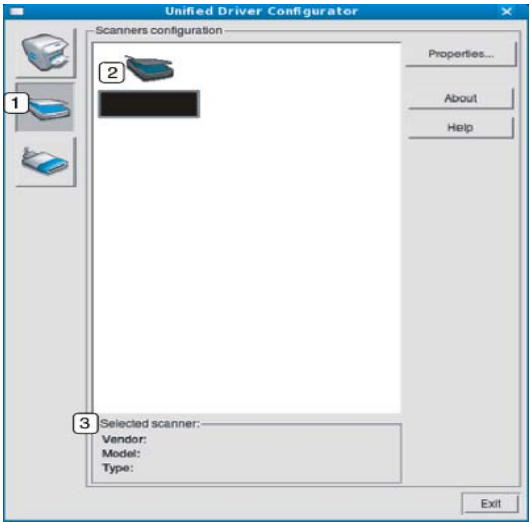
The Classes tab shows a list of available machine classes.



- |   |                                                                        |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Shows all of the machine classes.                                      |
| 2 | Shows the status of the class and the number of machines in the class. |
- **Refresh:** Renews the classes list.
  - **Add Class:** Allows you to add a new machine class.
  - **Remove Class:** Removes the selected machine class.

Scanners configuration

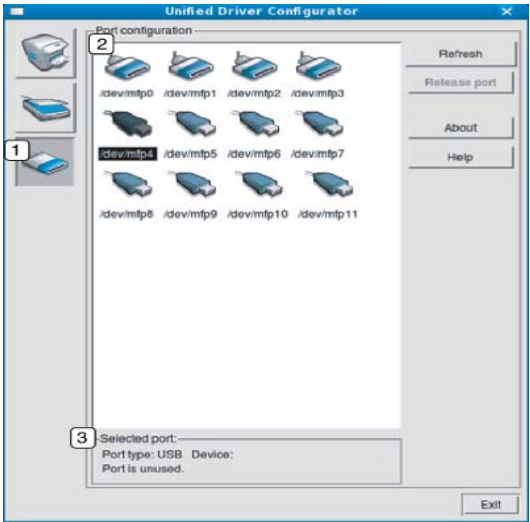
In this window, you can monitor the activity of scanner devices, view a list of installed Samsung machine devices, change device properties, and scan images.



- |   |                                                        |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Switches to <b>Scanners configuration</b> .            |
| 2 | Shows all of the installed scanners.                   |
| 3 | Shows the vendor, model name and type of your scanner. |
- **Properties:** Allows you to change the scan properties and scan a document.

Ports configuration

In this window, you can view the list of available ports, check the status of each port and release a port that is stalled in a busy state when its owner has terminated the job for any reason.



- |   |                                          |
|---|------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Switches to <b>Ports configuration</b> . |
| 2 | Shows all of the available ports.        |



|   |                                                               |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3 | Shows the port type, device connected to the port, and status |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------|

- **Refresh:** Renews the available ports list.
- **Release port:** Releases the selected port.

**Sharing Ports Between Printers and Scanners**

Your machine may be connected to a host computer via a parallel port or USB port. Since the machine device contains more than one device (printer and scanner), it is necessary to organize proper access of “consumer” applications to these devices via the single I/O port.

The Unified Linux Driver package provides an appropriate port sharing mechanism that is used by Samsung printer and scanner drivers. The drivers talk to their devices via so-called machine ports. The current status of any machine port can be viewed via the **Ports configuration**. The port sharing prevents you from accessing one functional block of the machine device, while another block is in use.

When you install a new machine device onto your system, it is strongly recommended you do this with the assistance of an Unified Driver Configurator. In this case you will be asked to choose I/O port for the new device. This choice will provide the most suitable configuration for machine’s functionality. For machine scanners, I/O ports are being chosen by scanner drivers automatically, so proper settings are applied by default.

# maintenance

This chapter provides information for maintaining your machine and the toner cartridge.


## This chapter includes:

- Printing a machine report
- Finding the serial number
- Cleaning a machine
- Storing the toner cartridge
- Tips for moving & storing your machine

## PRINTING A MACHINE REPORT

You can print the machine's information and job report.

1. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
2. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **System Setup** and press **OK**.
3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Reports** and press **OK**.
4. Press the up/down arrow until the report or list you want to print appears.press **OK**.  
To print all reports and lists, select **All Report**.
5. Press the left/right arrow to highlight **Yes** at the **Printing?** prompt and press **OK**.

 You can use SyncThru™ Web Service to print the machine's configuration or browse the status. Open the web browser in the networked computer and type the machine's IP address. When SyncThru™ Web Service opens, click **Information > Print Information**.


## FINDING THE SERIAL NUMBER

When you call for service or register as a user on the Samsung website, the machine's serial number by taking the following steps:

1. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
2. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **System Setup** and press **OK**.
3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Maintenance** and press **OK**.
4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Serial Number** and press **OK**.
5. Check your machine's serial number.
6. Press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.

## CLEANING A MACHINE

If printing quality problems occur or if you use your machine in a dusty environment, you need to clean your machine regularly to keep the best printing condition and use your machine longer.

- 
- Cleaning the cabinet of the machine with cleaning materials containing large amounts of alcohol, solvent, or other strong substances can discolor or distort the cabinet.
  - If your machine or the surrounding area is contaminated with toner, we recommend you use cloth or tissue dampened with water to clean it. If you use a vacuum cleaner, toner blows in the air and might be harmful to you.

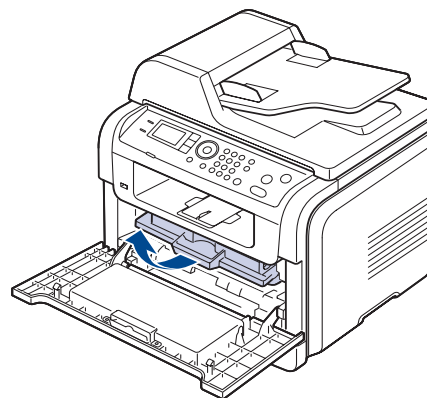
## Cleaning the outside


Clean the machine cabinet with a soft, lint-free cloth. Dampen the cloth slightly with water, but be careful not to let any water drip onto or into the machine.

## Cleaning the inside

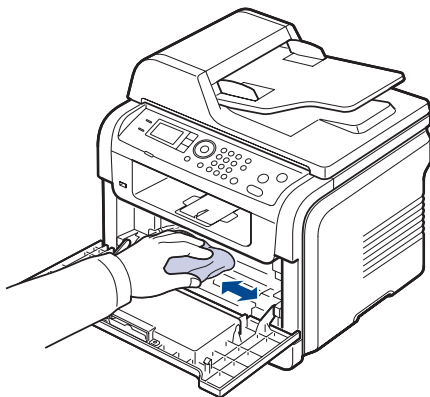
During the printing process, paper, toner, and dust particles can accumulate inside the machine. This buildup can cause print quality problems, such as toner specks or smearing. Cleaning the inside of the machine clears and reduces these problems.

1. Turn the machine off and unplug the power cord. Wait for the machine to cool down.
2. Open the front door and pull the toner cartridge out. Set it on a clean flat surface



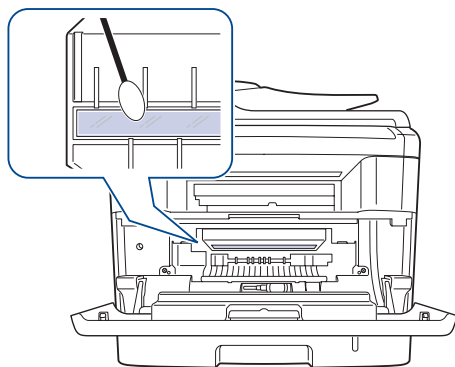
- 
- To prevent damage to the toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover it with a piece of paper, if necessary.
  - Do not touch the green surface underside of the toner cartridge. Use the handle on the cartridge to avoid touching this area.

3. With a dry, lint-free cloth, wipe away any dust and spilled toner from the toner cartridge area.



While cleaning the inside of the machine, be careful not to damage the transfer roller or any other inside parts. Do not use solvents such as benzene or thinner to clean. Printing quality problems can occur and cause damage to the machine.

4. Locate the long strip of glass (LSU) inside the top of the cartridge compartment and gently clean the glass with a swab.

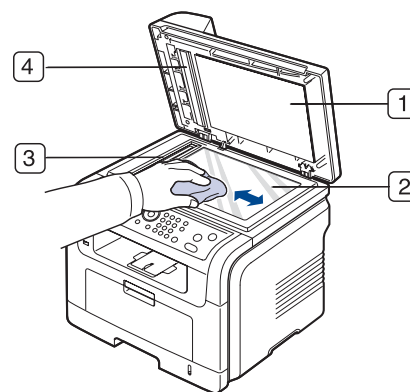


5. Reinsert the toner cartridge and close the front door.
6. Plug in the power cord and turn the machine on.

## Cleaning the scan unit

Keeping the scan unit clean helps ensure the best possible copies. We suggest that you clean the scan unit at the start of each day and during the day, as needed.

1. Slightly dampen a soft, lint-free cloth or paper towel with water.
2. Open the scanner lid.
3. Wipe the surface of the scanner glass and the document feeder glass until it is clean and dry.



- |   |                       |
|---|-----------------------|
| 1 | Scanner lid           |
| 2 | Scanner glass         |
| 3 | Document feeder glass |
| 4 | White sheet           |

4. Wipe the underside of the scanner lid and white sheet until it is clean and dry.
5. Close the scanner lid.

## STORING THE TONER CARTRIDGE

To get the best, print quality from the toner cartridge, keep the following guidelines in mind:

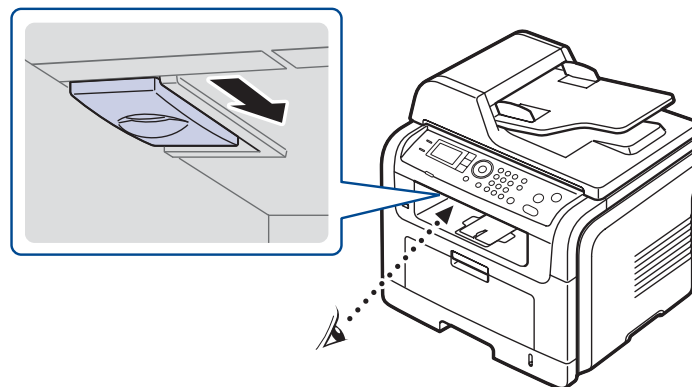
- Do not remove the toner cartridge from its package until ready to use.
- Do not refill the toner cartridge. The machine warranty does not cover damage caused by using a refilled cartridge.
- Store toner cartridges in the same environment as your machine.

## Expected cartridge life

The life of the toner cartridge yield depends on the amount of toner that print jobs require. The actual number may also be different depending on the print density of the pages you print on, and the number of pages may be affected by the operating environment, printing interval, media type, and media size. If you print a lot of graphics, you may need to change the cartridge more often.

## TIPS FOR MOVING & STORING YOUR MACHINE

- When moving the machine, do not tilt or turn it upside down. Otherwise, the inside of the machine may be contaminated by toner, which can cause damage to the machine or bad print quality.
- When moving the machine, make sure at least two people are holding the machine securely.
- When moving the machine or when machine is not in use for a long time, lock the scanner lock.



# troubleshooting

This chapter gives helpful information for what to do if you encounter an error.

## This chapter includes:

- Redistributing toner
- Clearing original document jams
- Tips for avoiding paper jams
- Clearing paper jams
- Understanding display messages
- Solving other problems

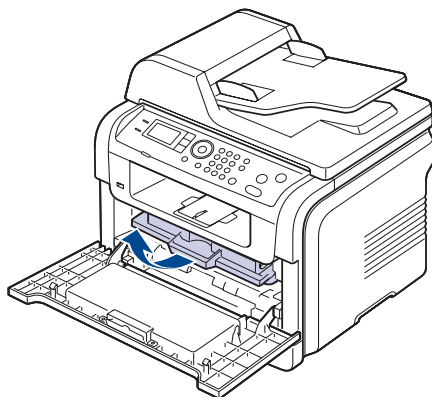
## REDISTRIBUTING TONER

When the toner cartridge is near the end of its life:

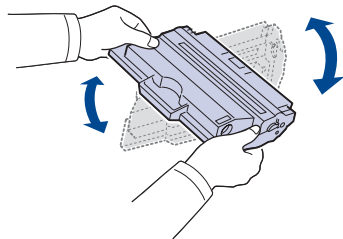
- White streaks or light printing occurs.
- **Toner is Low. Order new one** appears on the display.
- The **Status** LED blinks red.


If this happens, you can temporarily improve print quality by redistributing the remaining toner in the cartridge. In some cases, white streaks or light printing will still occur even after you have redistributed the toner.


1. Open the front door.
2. Pull the toner cartridge out.



3. Thoroughly roll the cartridge five or six times to distribute the toner evenly inside the cartridge.



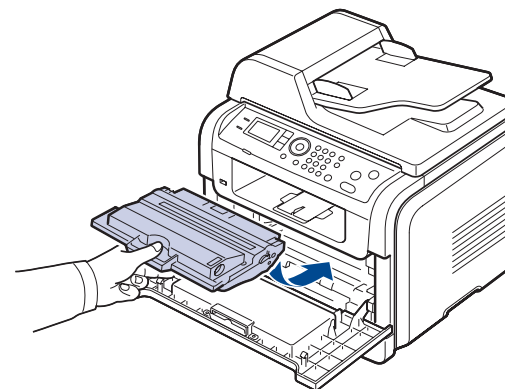
 If toner gets on your clothing, wipe it off with a dry cloth and wash clothing in cold water. Hot water sets toner into fabric.

 Do not touch the green underside of the toner cartridge. Use the handle on the cartridge to avoid touching this area.

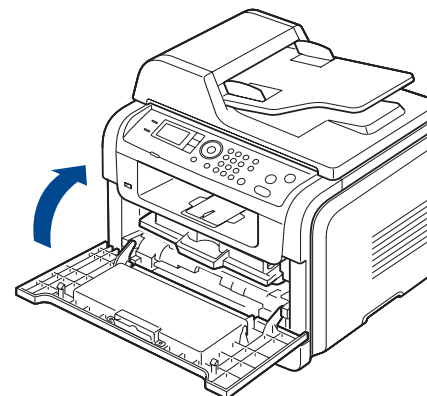
4. Hold the toner cartridge by the handle and slowly insert the cartridge into the opening in the machine.

Tabs on the sides of the cartridge and corresponding grooves within the machine will guide the cartridge into the correct position until it locks into

place completely.





5. Close the front door. Ensure that the cover is securely closed.



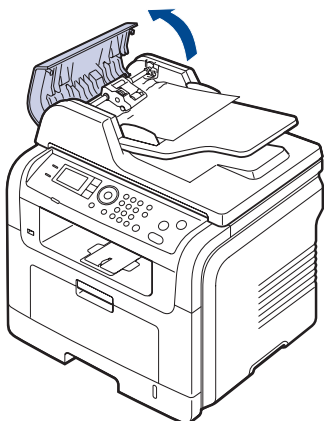
## CLEARING ORIGINAL DOCUMENT JAMS

When an original jams while passing through the document feeder, a warning message appears on the display screen.

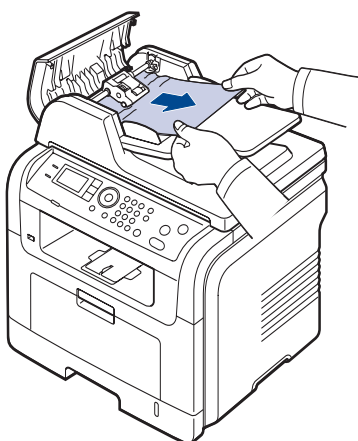
 To avoid tearing the document, remove the jammed document slowly and gently.


 To prevent document jams, use the scanner glass for thick, thin, or mixed paper-type originals.

1. Remove any remaining pages from the document feeder.
2. Open the document feeder cover.

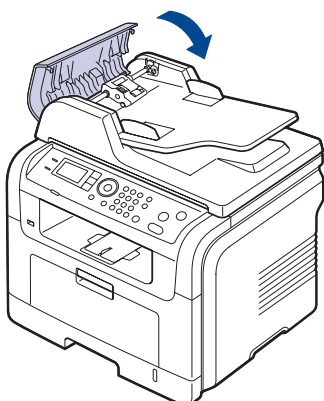


3. Gently remove the jammed paper from the document feeder.

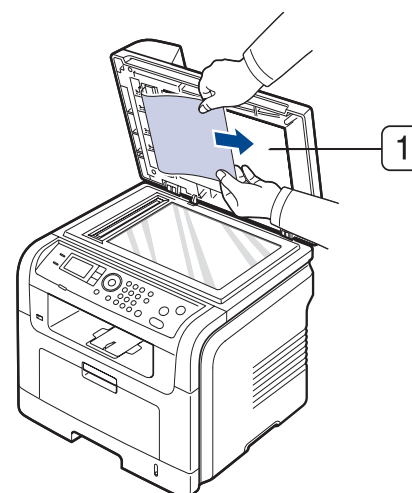


 If you see no paper in this area, go to step 5.

4. Close the document feeder cover. Reload the pages you removed, if any, in the document feeder.



5. Open the scanner lid.
6. Seize the misfeed paper, and remove the paper from the feed area by carefully pulling it to the right using both hands.

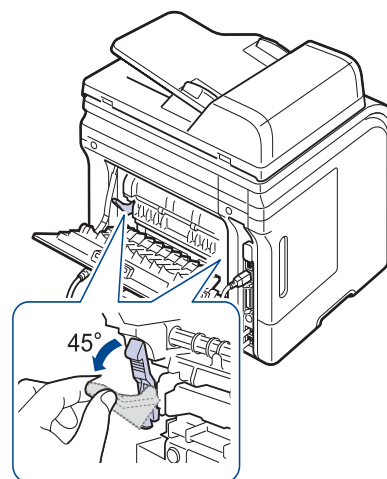


**1 scanner lid**


7. Close the scanner lid. Load the removed pages back into the document feeder.

## TIPS FOR AVOIDING PAPER CURLS

1. Open the rear door.
2. Pull down the pressure lever on each side about 45 degrees.



3. Close the rear door.

 If the rear door does not close, you have pull down the pressure lever too much.

## TIPS FOR AVOIDING PAPER JAMS


By selecting the correct media types, most paper jams can be avoided. When a paper jam occurs, refer to the next guidelines.

- Ensure that the adjustable guides are positioned correctly. (See "Loading paper in the tray" on page 55.)  
Do not overload the tray. Ensure that the paper level is below the paper capacity mark on the inside of the tray.
- Do not remove paper from the tray while your machine is printing.
- Flex, fan, and straighten paper before loading.
- Do not use creased, damp, or highly curled paper.


- Do not use creased, damp, or highly curled paper.
- Do not mix paper types in a tray.
- Use only recommended print media. (See "Setting the paper size and type" on page 59.)
- Ensure that the recommended side of the print media is facing down in the tray, or facing up in the multi-purpose tray.

## CLEARING PAPER JAMS

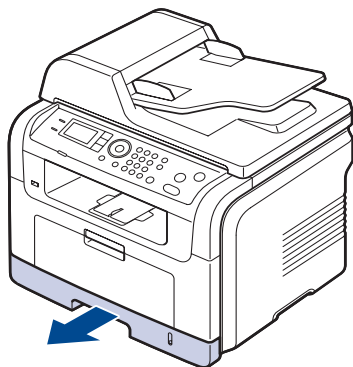
When a paper jam occurs, a warning message appears on the display screen.

 To avoid tearing the paper, pull the jammed paper out slowly and gently. Follow the instructions in the following sections to clear the jam.

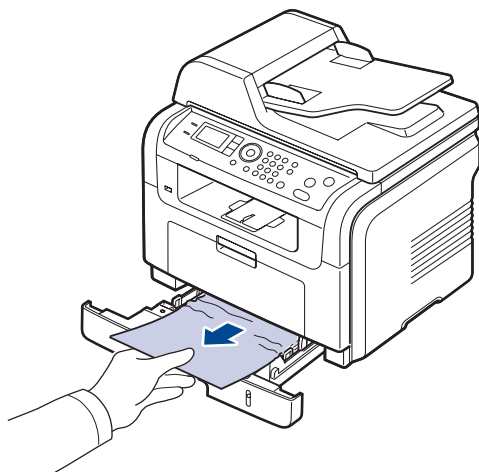
### In tray 1

 Click this link to open an animation about clearing a jam.

1. Open and close the front door. The jammed paper is automatically ejected from the machine.  
If the paper does not exit, go to the next step.
2. Pull out tray 1 .




3. Remove the jammed paper by gently pulling it straight out.



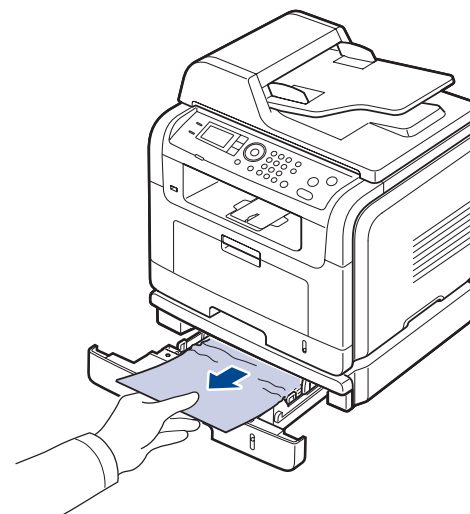
If the paper does not move when you pull, or if you do not see the paper in this area, check the fuser area around the toner cartridge. (See "Inside the machine" on page 110.)

4. Insert tray 1 back into the machine until it snaps into place. Printing automatically resumes.

### In optional tray 2

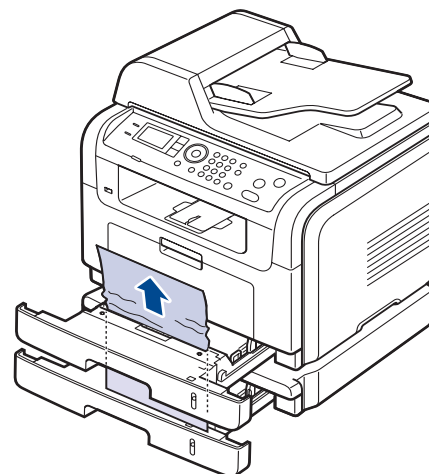
 Click this link to open an animation about clearing a jam.

1. Pull out optional tray 2.
2. Remove the jammed paper from the machine.




If the paper does not move when you pull or if you do not see the paper in this area, stop and go to the next step.

3. Pull tray 1 half-way out.
4. Pull the paper straight up and out.



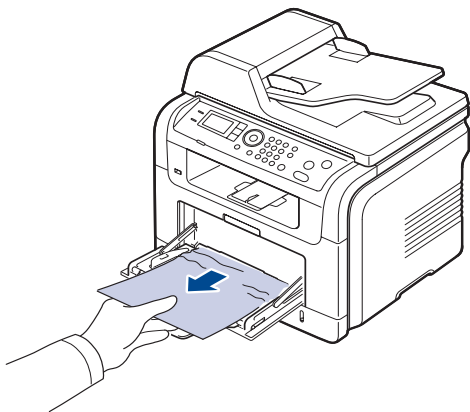
5. Insert the trays back into the machine. Printing automatically resumes.

### In the multi-purpose tray

 Click this link to open an animation about clearing a jam.





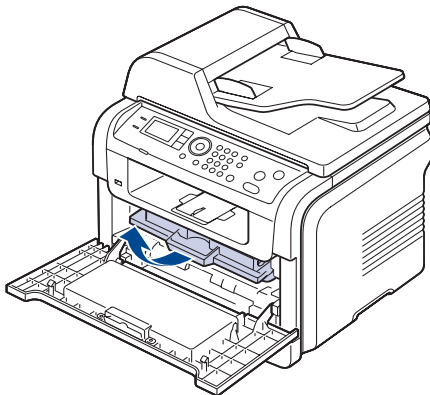
1. If the paper is not feeding properly, pull the paper out of the machine.



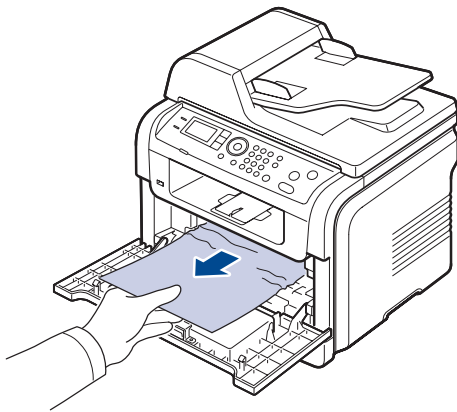
2. Open and close the front door to resume printing.

### Inside the machine

-  Click this link to open an animation about clearing a jam.
  -  The fuser area is hot. Take care when removing paper from the machine.
1. Open the front door and pull the toner cartridge out, lightly pushing it down.




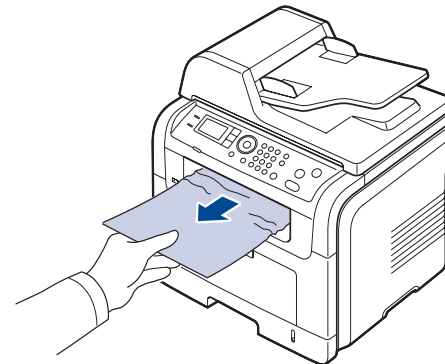
2. Remove the jammed paper by gently pulling it straight out.



3. Replace the toner cartridge and close the front door. Printing automatically resumes.

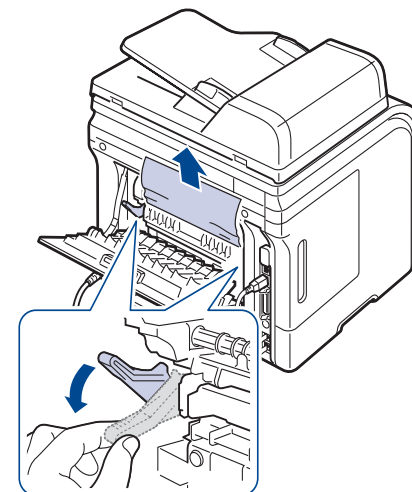
### In exit area

-  Click this link to open an animation about clearing a jam.
1. Open and close the front door. The jammed paper is automatically ejected from the machine.  
If you do not see the jammed paper, go to next step.
  2. Gently pull the paper out of the output tray.



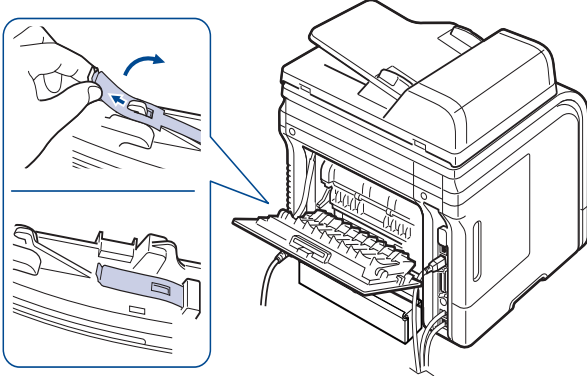
If you do not see the jammed paper or if there is any resistance when you pull, stop and go to the next step.

3. Open the rear door.
4. If you see the jammed paper, pull down the pressure levers on each side and remove the paper. Skip to step 9.

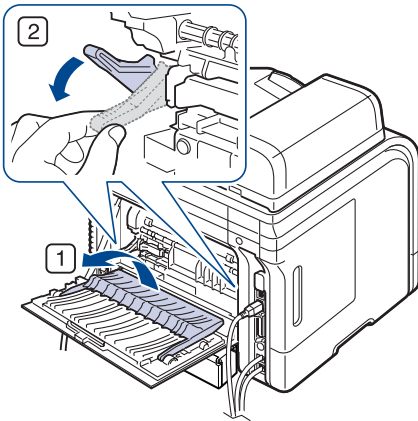


If you still do not see the paper, go to the next step.

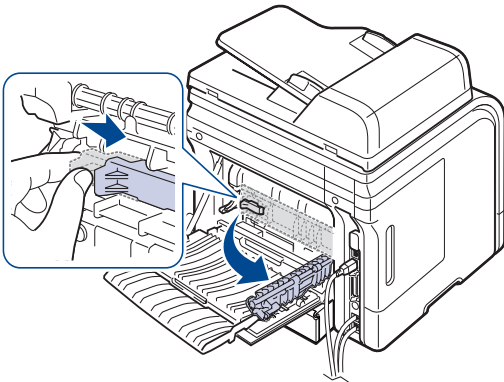
5. Release the strip, the rear door stopper and fully open the rear door, as shown.



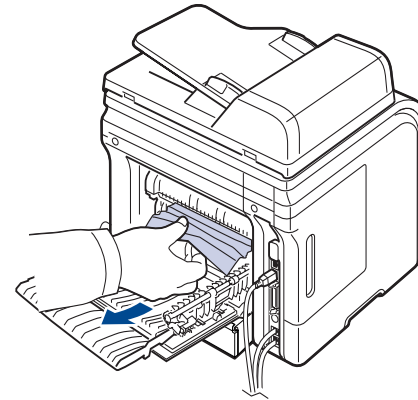
6. Unfold the duplex guide fully and release the pressure lever on each side.



7. While pushing the fuser lever to the right, open the fuser door.




8. Pull the jammed paper out.



9. Return the lever, door, strip, and guide to their original position.

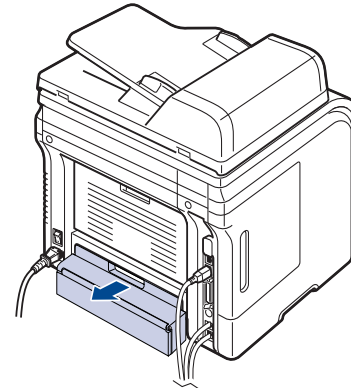
10. Close the rear door. Printing automatically resumes.

### In the duplex unit area

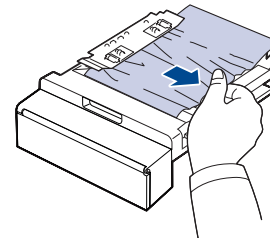
 Click this link to open an animation about clearing a jam.

If the duplex unit is not inserted correctly, a paper jam may occur. Make sure that the duplex unit is inserted correctly.

1. Pull the duplex unit out of the machine.

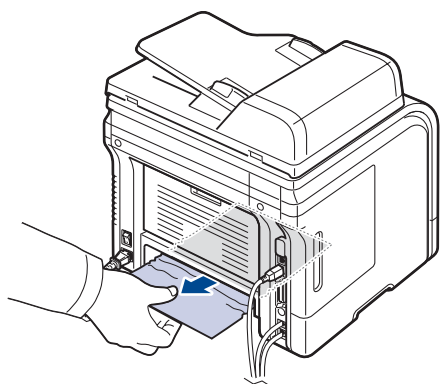


2. Remove the jammed paper from the duplex unit.



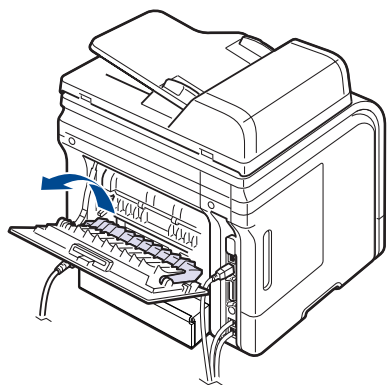
If the paper does not come out with the duplex unit, remove the paper from the bottom of the machine.

Insert the duplex unit into the machine.

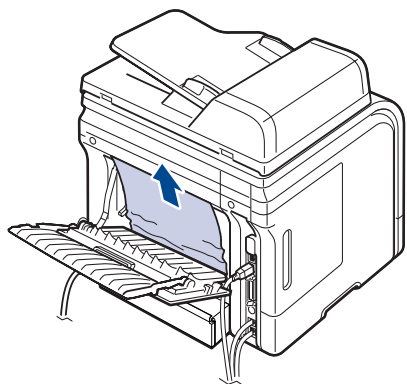


If you still do not see the paper, go to the next step.

- 3. Open the rear door.
- 4. Unfold the duplex guide fully.



- 5. Pull the jammed paper out.



- 6. Fold the duplex guide and close the rear door.

## UNDERSTANDING DISPLAY MESSAGES

Messages appear on the control panel display to indicate the machine's status or errors. Some error messages are shown with graphics to help you troubleshoot problem.

### Checking display messages

- 1. When errors occur, **Check Status** appears on the display and press **OK**.
- 2. Check the display message to see what kind of error has occurred. If several messages appear, press the up/down arrow to highlight the message you want solve.
- 3. Press **OK** on the control panel.  
Refer to the tables below to understand the messages' and their meaning, and solve the problem, if necessary.



- If **Check Status** still appears, repeat above steps.
- If a message is not in the table, reboot the power and try the printing job again. If the problem persists, call for service.
- When you call for service, provide the service representative with the contents of display message.
- Some messages may not appear in the display depending on options or models.
- [xxx] indicates the media type.
- [zzz] indicates the paper size.
- [yyy] indicates the tray.

| MESSAGE                                                                                  | MEANING                                 | SUGGESTED SOLUTIONS                                                    |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>BOOTP problem</b><br><b>BOOTP has a problem.</b><br><b>Reconfigure DHCP/static IP</b> | There is a problem with the network.    | Check your network environment, or contact your network administrator. |
| <b>BOOTP problem</b><br><b>BOOTP has a problem.</b><br><b>Switching to Auto IP</b>       | There is a problem with the network.    | Check your network environment, or contact your network administrator. |
| <b>Connection Error</b>                                                                  | Connection with the SMTP server failed. | Check the server settings and the network cable.                       |
| <b>Data Read Fail</b><br><b>Check USB key</b>                                            | Time expired while reading date.        | Try again.                                                             |
| <b>Data Write Fail</b><br><b>Check USB key</b>                                           | Storing to the USB memory failed.       | Check the available USB memory space.                                  |
| <b>DHCP problem</b><br><b>DHCP has a problem.</b><br><b>Reconfigure BOOTP/static IP</b>  | There is a problem with the network.    | Check your network environment, or contact your network administrator. |
| <b>DHCP problem</b><br><b>DHCP has a problem.</b><br><b>Switching to Auto IP</b>         | There is a problem with the network.    | Check your network environment, or contact your network administrator. |

| MESSAGE                                                                | MEANING                                                                                                                                                        | SUGGESTED SOLUTIONS                                                                                                                      |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Door is open. Close it</b>                                          | The front door is not securely latched.                                                                                                                        | Close the front door until it locks into place.                                                                                          |
| <b>Enter Again</b>                                                     | You entered an unavailable item.                                                                                                                               | Enter the correct item again.                                                                                                            |
| <b>File Format is Not Supported</b>                                    | The selected file format is not supported.                                                                                                                     | Use the correct file format.                                                                                                             |
| <b>Group Not Available</b>                                             | You have tried to select a group location number where only a single location number can be used, such as when adding locations for a multiple send operation. | Use a speed dial number or dial number manually using the number keypad.                                                                 |
| <b>IP Conflict This IP address conflicts with that of other system</b> | The IP address is used elsewhere.                                                                                                                              | Check the IP address or obtain a new IP address.                                                                                         |
| <b>Jam bottom of duplex</b>                                            | Paper has jammed during duplex printing.                                                                                                                       | Clear the jam. (See "In the duplex unit area" on page 111.)                                                                              |
| <b>Jam in exit area</b>                                                | Paper has jammed in exit area.                                                                                                                                 | Clear the jam. (See "In exit area" on page 110.)                                                                                         |
| <b>Jam inside Machine</b>                                              | Paper has jammed inside the machine.                                                                                                                           | Clear the jam. (See "Inside the machine" on page 110.)                                                                                   |
| <b>Jam top of duplex</b>                                               | Paper has jammed during duplex printing.                                                                                                                       | Clear the jam. (See "In the duplex unit area" on page 111.)                                                                              |
| <b>Junk Fax Error Junk Fax Job Cancelled</b>                           | The machine has received a fax from which is registered as a junk fax.                                                                                         | The received fax data will be deleted.Reconfirm junk fax setup. (See "Receiving" on page 92.)                                            |
| <b>Line Busy The line is already engaged. Try later</b>                | The receiving fax machine did not answer or the line is already engaged.                                                                                       | Try again after a few minutes.                                                                                                           |
| <b>Line Error The Fax Line has a problem. Try again</b>                | Your machine cannot connect with the receiving fax machine or has lost contact because of a problem with the phone line.                                       | Try again. If the problem persists, wait an hour or so for the line to clear again. Or, turn the ECM mode on (See "Sending" on page 92.) |
| <b>Mail Size Error Mail exceeds than server support</b>                | The mail size is larger than the supported size by SMTP server.                                                                                                | Divide your mail or reduce the resolution.                                                                                               |
| <b>Mail Size Error One Page is Too Large</b>                           | Single page data exceeds the configured mail size.                                                                                                             | Reduce the resolution and try again.                                                                                                     |

| MESSAGE                                                                 | MEANING                                                                                               | SUGGESTED SOLUTIONS                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Memory Full Cancel   Start</b>                                       | The memory is full.                                                                                   | Press the left/right arrow to highlight <b>Cancel</b> or <b>Start</b> , then press <b>OK</b> . If you select <b>Cancel</b> , the machine stops the fax job. If you select <b>Start</b> , the machine only sends scanned documents of the fax job. |
| <b>Memory Full Divide the Job</b>                                       | The memory is full.                                                                                   | Split the transmission into more than one operation.                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>Memory Full Fax memory is full. Print or remove received fax job</b> | The memory is full.                                                                                   | Print or remove the received fax data in the memory.                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>Network Error There is a problem with the network.</b>               | There is a problem with the network.                                                                  | Check the network. If the problem persists, ask the system administrator or the person who has set up your local network..                                                                                                                        |
| <b>Network Problem Network cable is not connected. Check it</b>         | The machine is not connected with a network cable.                                                    | Connect the machine to the network with a network cable.                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>Network Problem Network card is not installed. Check it</b>          | There is a problem on the network interface.                                                          | Turn the power switch off and on. If the problem persists, call for service.                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <b>No Answer The remote fax machine has not answered</b>                | The remote fax machine has not answered after several redial attempts.                                | Try again. Verify the number to ensure that a fax can be received.                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>No such job</b>                                                      | You are performing an <b>Add Pages</b> or <b>Cancel Job</b> operation, but there are no jobs waiting. | Check the display to see if there are any scheduled jobs. The display should indicate if any scheduled jobs are in Standby mode, for example, Delay Fax.                                                                                          |
| <b>Original paper Jam</b>                                               | The load original has jammed in the document feeder.                                                  | Clear the jam. (See "Clearing original document jams" on page 107.)                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <b>Output bin Full Output bin Full. Remove printed paper</b>            | The document output tray is full.                                                                     | The document output tray can hold up to 150 sheets of plain paper. Once the paper is removed from the document output tray, the printer resumes printing.                                                                                         |

| MESSAGE                                                                            | MEANING                                                                                      | SUGGESTED SOLUTIONS                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Paper Empty in [yyy]<br/>Paper is empty in [yyy].<br/>Load paper</b>            | There is no paper in the tray.                                                               | Load paper in the tray. (See "Loading paper in the tray" on page 55.)                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>Paper Jam in MP tray</b>                                                        | Paper has jammed in the multi-purpose tray area.                                             | Clear the jam. (See "In the multi-purpose tray" on page 109.)                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>Paper Jam in tray 1</b>                                                         | Paper has jammed in the tray1 area.                                                          | Clear the jam. (See "In tray 1" on page 109.)                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>Paper Jam in tray 2</b>                                                         | Paper has jammed in the tray2 area.                                                          | Clear the jam. (See "In optional tray 2" on page 109.)                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>Paper mismatch [yyy]<br/>Load [zzz][xxx]<br/>Continue Ⓚ Cancel Ⓚ</b>            | The paper size specified in the printer properties does not match the paper you are loading. | You can select the option between <b>Continue</b> or <b>Cancel</b> . If you select <b>Cancel</b> , the printing job will stop. Load the correct paper in the tray. If you select <b>Continue</b> , printing job will continue. |
| <b>Pickup roller is worn [yyy] pickup roller is worn.<br/>Replace with new one</b> | The pickup roller has reached the end of its lifespan.                                       | This message appears when the pickup roller is worn. Replace the pickup roller with a new one. Call for service.                                                                                                               |
| <b>Rear Door is open. Close it</b>                                                 | The rear door is not securely latched.                                                       | Close the rear door until it locks into place.                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>Retry Redial?</b>                                                               | The machine is waiting for a specified time interval to redial a previously busy station.    | You can press <b>OK</b> to immediately redial, or <b>Stop/Clear</b> to cancel the redial operation.                                                                                                                            |
| <b>Replace New Toner<br/>Replace with New Toner</b>                                | The toner cartridge has reached the end of its lifespan.                                     | Replace the toner cartridge with a Samsung-genuine toner cartridge. (See "Replacing the toner cartridge" on page 125.)                                                                                                         |
| <b>Scanner locked</b>                                                              | The scanner module is locked.                                                                | Unlock the CCD lock. (See "Front view" on page 28. ) Or turn off the machine and on again. If the problem persists, call for service.                                                                                          |
| <b>Self Diagnostics... Please wait</b>                                             | The engine in your printer is checking some problems detected.                               | Please wait a few minutes.                                                                                                                                                                                                     |

| MESSAGE                                                                            | MEANING                                                         | SUGGESTED SOLUTIONS                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Send Error<br/>There is a problem in DNS</b>                                    | There is a problem in DNS.                                      | Configure the DNS setting.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>Send Error<br/>There is a problem in POP3</b>                                   | There is a problem in POP3.                                     | Configure the POP3 setting.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>Send Error<br/>There is a problem in SMTP</b>                                   | There is a problem in SMTP.                                     | Change to the available server.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <b>Send Error<br/>There is a problem in SMTP authentication</b>                    | There is a problem in SMTP authentication.                      | Configure the authentication setting.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>Send Error<br/>There is a problem on the NIC Card</b>                           | There is a problem on network interface card.                   | Turn the power switch off and on. If the problem persists, call for service.                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>Toner is empty<br/>Toner is empty.<br/>Replace with new one</b>                 | The toner cartridge has reached the end of its lifespan.        | You can select the option among <b>Stop</b> or <b>Continue</b> . If you select <b>Stop</b> , the machine stops printing. If you select <b>Continue</b> , the machine keeps printing, but the quality cannot be guaranteed. (See "Replacing the toner cartridge" on page 125.) |
| <b>Toner is worn<br/>Toner is worn.<br/>Replace with new one</b>                   | The toner cartridge is near the end of its lifespan.            | You can select the option among <b>Stop</b> or <b>Continue</b> . If you select <b>Stop</b> , the machine stops printing. If you select <b>Continue</b> , the machine keeps printing, but the quality cannot be guaranteed. (See "Replacing the toner cartridge" on page 125.) |
| <b>Toner is Low<br/>Toner is Low.<br/>Order new one</b>                            | The toner cartridge is getting empty.                           | Take out the toner cartridge and thoroughly shake it. By doing this, you can temporarily reestablish printing operations. (See "Redistributing toner" on page 107.)                                                                                                           |
| <b>Toner Not Compatible<br/>Toner cartridge is not compatible.<br/>Check guide</b> | The toner cartridge you have installed is not for your machine. | Install a Samsung-genuine toner cartridge designed for your machine.                                                                                                                                                                                                          |



| MESSAGE                                                                       | MEANING                                             | SUGGESTED SOLUTIONS                                                                                                                                                          |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Toner Not Installed</b><br>Toner cartridge is not installed.<br>Install it | The toner cartridge is not installed.               | Install the toner cartridge.                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>Too many Faxes</b><br>Too many faxes are received.<br>Print or remove job. | Too many faxes are received.                        | Print or remove received fax.                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>Too many Faxes</b><br>Too many faxes are queued.<br>Wait or remove job.    | Too many faxes are queued to be sent.               | Cancel reserved fax in priority fax feature.                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>[yyy] empty</b><br>Load [zzz][xxx]                                         | There is no paper in the tray.                      | Load paper in the tray. (See "Loading paper in the tray" on page 55.)                                                                                                        |
| <b>Tray2 Not Installed</b><br>Tray2 is not installed                          | The optional tray2 is not installed.                | Install the optional tray 2. If the optional tray 2 is installed, check the cable connecting the machine and the optional tray 2. If the problem persists, call for service. |
| <b>Tray2 has a problem</b><br>Communication problem occurred with Tray2       | The machine cannot communicate the optional tray 2. | Check the cable connecting the machine and the optional tray 2. If the problem persists, call for service.                                                                   |

## SOLVING OTHER PROBLEMS

The following chart lists some conditions that may occur and the recommended solutions. Follow the suggested solutions until the problem is corrected. If the problem persists, call for service.

### Paper feeding problems


| CONDITION                                               | SUGGESTED SOLUTIONS                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|---------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Paper jams during printing.</b>                      | Clear the paper jam. (See "Clearing paper jams" on page 109.)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>Paper sticks together.</b>                           | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check the maximum paper capacity of the tray. (See "Print media specifications" on page 133.)</li> <li>Make sure that you are using the correct type of paper. (See "Print media specifications" on page 133.)</li> <li>Remove paper from the tray and flex or fan the paper.</li> <li>Humid conditions may cause some paper to stick together.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <b>Multiple sheets of paper do not feed.</b>            | Different types of paper may be stacked in the tray. Load paper of only one type, size, and weight.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>Paper does not feed into the machine.</b>            | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Remove any obstructions from inside the machine.</li> <li>Paper has not been loaded correctly. Remove paper from the tray and reload it correctly.</li> <li>There is too much paper in the tray. Remove excess paper from the tray.</li> <li>The paper is too thick. Use only paper that meets the specifications required by the machine. (See "Print media specifications" on page 133.)</li> <li>If an original does not feed into the machine, the document feeder rubber pad may require to be replaced. Contact a service representative.</li> </ul>                      |
| <b>The paper keeps jamming.</b>                         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>There is too much paper in the tray. Remove excess paper from the tray. If you are printing on special materials, use the multi-purpose tray.</li> <li>An incorrect type of paper is being used. Use only paper that meets the specifications required by the machine. (See "Print media specifications" on page 133.)</li> <li>There may be debris inside the machine. Open the front door and remove any debris.</li> <li>If an original does not feed into the machine, the document feeder rubber pad may need to be replaced. Contact a service representative.</li> </ul> |
| <b>Transparencies stick together in the paper exit.</b> | Use only transparencies specifically designed for laser printers. Remove each transparency as it exits from the machine.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <b>Envelopes skew or fail to feed correctly.</b>        | Ensure that the paper guides are against both sides of the envelopes.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |



Printing problems

| CONDITION                   | POSSIBLE CAUSE                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | SUGGESTED SOLUTIONS                                                                                                                                                                               |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The machine does not print. | The machine is not receiving power.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Check the power cord connections. Check the power switch and the power source.                                                                                                                    |
|                             | The machine is not selected as the default machine.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Select your machine as your default machine in your Windows.                                                                                                                                      |
|                             | Check the machine for the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>The front door is not closed. Close the front door.</li><li>Paper is jammed. Clear the paper jam. (See "Clearing paper jams" on page 109.)</li><li>No paper is loaded. Load paper. (See "Loading paper in the tray" on page 55.)</li><li>The toner cartridge is not installed. Install the toner cartridge.</li></ul> If a system error occurs, contact your service representative. |                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|                             | The connection cable between the computer and the machine is not connected properly.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Disconnect the machine cable and reconnect it.                                                                                                                                                    |
|                             | The connection cable between the computer and the machine is defective.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | If possible, attach the cable to another computer that is working properly and print a job. You can also try using a different machine cable.                                                     |
|                             | The port setting is incorrect.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Check the Windows printer setting to make sure that the print job is sent to the correct port. If the computer has more than one port, make sure that the machine is attached to the correct one. |
|                             | The machine may be configured incorrectly.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Check the <b>Printing Preferences</b> to ensure that all of the print settings are correct. . (See "Opening printing preferences" on page 61.)                                                    |
|                             | The printer driver may be incorrectly installed.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Repair the machine software. (See "Installing USB connected machine's driver" on page 34.)                                                                                                        |
|                             | The machine is malfunctioning.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Check the display message on the control panel to see if the machine is indicating a system error. Contact a service representative.                                                              |
|                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                   |

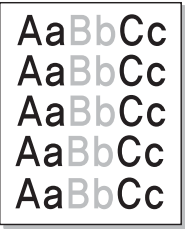
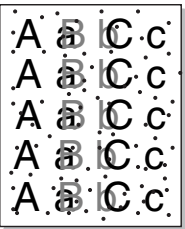
| CONDITION                                                        | POSSIBLE CAUSE                                                                                                | SUGGESTED SOLUTIONS                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (Continued) The machine does not print.                          | The document size is so big that the hard disk space of the computer is insufficient to access the print job. | Get more hard disk space and print the document again.                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| The machine selects print materials from the wrong paper source. | The paper option that was selected in the <b>Printing Preferences</b> may be incorrect.                       | For many software applications, the paper source selection is found under the Paper tab within the <b>Printing Preferences</b> . Select the correct paper source. See the printer driver help screen. (See "Opening printing preferences" on page 61.) |
| A print job is extremely slow.                                   | The job may be very complex.                                                                                  | Reduce the complexity of the page or try adjusting the print quality settings.                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Half the page is blank.                                          | The page orientation setting may be incorrect.                                                                | Change the page orientation in your application. See the printer driver help screen.                                                                                                                                                                   |
|                                                                  | The paper size and the paper size settings do not match.                                                      | Ensure that the paper size in the printer driver settings matches the paper in the tray.<br>Or, ensure that the paper size in the printer driver settings matches the paper selection in the software application settings you use.                    |

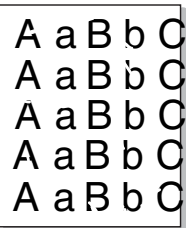
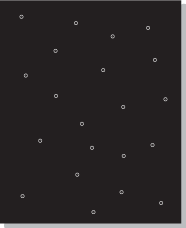
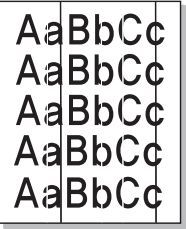
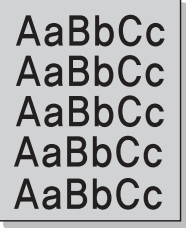
| CONDITION                                                                                                         | POSSIBLE CAUSE                                                                             | SUGGESTED SOLUTIONS                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>The machine prints, but the text is wrong, garbled, or incomplete.</b>                                         | The machine cable is loose or defective.                                                   | Disconnect the machine cable and reconnect. Try a print job that you have already printed successfully. If possible, attach the cable and the machine to another computer that you know works and try a print job. Finally, try a new machine cable.                                        |
|                                                                                                                   | The wrong printer driver was selected.                                                     | Check the application's printer selection menu to ensure that your machine is selected.                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|                                                                                                                   | The software application is malfunctioning.                                                | Try printing a job from another application.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|                                                                                                                   | The operating system is malfunctioning.                                                    | Exit Windows and reboot the computer. Turn the machine off and back on again.                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|                                                                                                                   | If you are in a DOS environment, the font setting for your machine may be set incorrectly. | Change the language setting. (See "Changing the display language" on page 49.)                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>Pages print, but they are blank.</b>                                                                           | The toner cartridge is defective or out of toner.                                          | Redistribute the toner, if necessary. If necessary, replace the toner cartridge.                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|                                                                                                                   | The file may have blank pages.                                                             | Check the file to ensure that it does not contain blank pages.                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|                                                                                                                   | Some parts, such as the controller or the board, may be defective.                         | Contact a service representative.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <b>The machine does not print PDF file correctly. Some parts of graphics, text, or illustrations are missing.</b> | Incompatibility between the PDF file and the Acrobat products.                             | Printing the PDF file as an image may enable the file to print. Turn on <b>Print As Image</b> from the Acrobat printing options.<br> It will take longer to print when you print a PDF file as an image. |


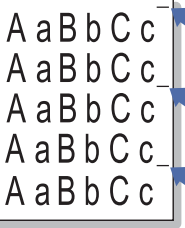

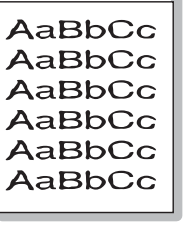
| CONDITION                                                                      | POSSIBLE CAUSE                                    | SUGGESTED SOLUTIONS                                                                                                                                                               |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>The print quality of photos is not good. Images are not clear.</b>          | The resolution of the photo is very low.          | Reduce the photo size. If you increase the photo size in the software application, the resolution will be reduced.                                                                |
| <b>Before printing, the machine emits vapor near the output tray.</b>          | Using damp paper can cause vapor during printing. | This is not a problem. Just keep printing.                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>The machine does not print special- sized paper, such as billing paper.</b> | Paper size and paper size setting do not match.   | Set the correct paper size in the <b>Custom Paper Size Settings</b> in the <b>Paper</b> tab in the <b>Printing Preferences</b> . (See "Opening printing preferences" on page 61.) |

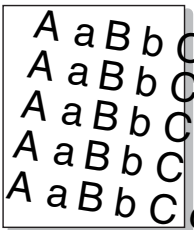
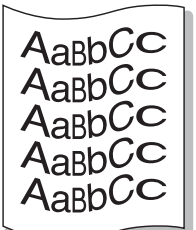
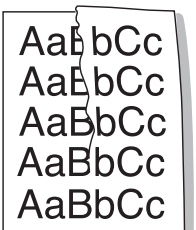
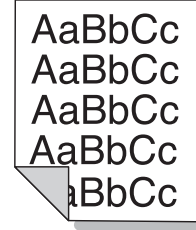

### Printing quality problems

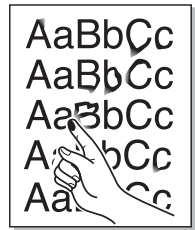
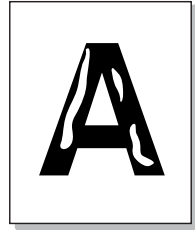
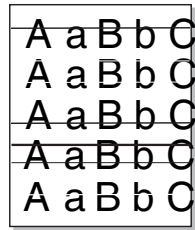
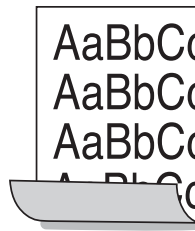
If the inside of the machine is dirty or paper has been loaded improperly, there might be a reduction in print quality. See the table below to clear the problem.

| CONDITION                                                                                                           | SUGGESTED SOLUTIONS                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Light or faded print</b><br> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If a vertical white streak or faded area appears on the page, the toner supply is low. You may be able to temporarily extend the toner cartridge life. (See "Redistributing toner" on page 107.) If this does not improve the print quality, install a new toner cartridge.</li> <li>The paper may not meet paper specifications; for example, the paper may be too moist or rough. (See "Print media specifications" on page 133.)</li> <li>If the entire page is light, the print resolution setting is too low or the toner save mode is on. Adjust the print resolution and turn the toner save mode off. See the help screen of the printer driver.</li> <li>A combination of faded or smeared defects may indicate that the toner cartridge needs cleaning. (See "Cleaning the inside" on page 105.)</li> <li>The surface of the LSU part inside the machine may be dirty. (See "Cleaning the inside" on page 105.)</li> </ul> |
| <b>Toner specks</b><br>        | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The paper may not meet specifications; for example, the paper may be too moist or rough. (See "Print media specifications" on page 133.)</li> <li>The transfer roller may be dirty. Clean the inside of your machine. Contact a service representative.</li> <li>The paper path may need cleaning. Contact a service representative.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |

| CONDITION                                                                                                               | SUGGESTED SOLUTIONS                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Dropouts</b><br>                    | <p>If faded areas, generally rounded, occur randomly on the page:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A single sheet of paper may be defective. Try reprinting the job.</li> <li>The moisture content of the paper is uneven or the paper has moist spots on its surface. Try a different brand of paper. (See "Print media specifications" on page 133.)</li> <li>The paper lot is bad. The manufacturing processes can cause some areas to reject toner. Try a different kind or brand of paper.</li> <li>Change the printer option and try again. Go to <b>Printing Preferences</b>, click <b>Paper</b> tab, and set type to <b>Thick</b>. (See "Opening printing preferences" on page 61.)</li> <li>If these steps do not correct the problem, contact a service representative.</li> </ul> |
| <b>White Spots</b><br>                 | <p>If white spots appear on the page:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The paper is too rough and a lot of dirt from a paper falls to the inner devices within the machine, so the transfer roller may be dirty. Clean the inside of your machine. (See "Cleaning the inside" on page 105.)</li> <li>The paper path may need cleaning. (See "Cleaning the inside" on page 105.)</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>Vertical lines</b><br>             | <p>If black vertical streaks appear on the page:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The surface (drum part) of the toner cartridge inside the machine has probably been scratched. Remove the toner cartridge and install a new one. (See "Replacing the toner cartridge" on page 125.)</li> </ul> <p>If white vertical streaks appear on the page:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The surface of the LSU part inside the machine may be dirty. (See "Cleaning the inside" on page 105.)</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>Color or Black background</b><br> | <p>If the amount of background shading becomes unacceptable:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Change to a lighter weight paper. (See "Print media specifications" on page 133.)</li> <li>Check the environmental conditions: very dry conditions or a high level of humidity (higher than 80% RH) can increase the amount of background shading.</li> <li>Remove the old toner cartridge and, install a new one. (See "Replacing the toner cartridge" on page 125.)</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |

| CONDITION                                                                                                                 | SUGGESTED SOLUTIONS                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Toner smear</b><br>                 | <p>If toner smears on the page:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Clean the inside of the machine. (See "Cleaning the inside" on page 105.)</li> <li>Check the paper type and quality. (See "Print media specifications" on page 133.)</li> <li>Remove the toner cartridge and then, install a new one. (See "Replacing the toner cartridge" on page 125.)</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>Vertical repetitive defects</b><br> | <p>If marks repeatedly appear on the printed side of the page at even intervals:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The toner cartridge may be damaged. If you still have the same problem, remove the toner cartridge and, install a new one. (See "Replacing the toner cartridge" on page 125.)</li> <li>Parts of the machine may have toner on them. If the defects occur on the back of the page, the problem will likely correct itself after a few more pages.</li> <li>The fusing assembly may be damaged. Contact a service representative.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <b>Background scatter</b><br>         | <p>Background scatter results from bits of toner randomly distributed on the printed page.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The paper may be too damp. Try printing with a different batch of paper. Do not open packages of paper until necessary so that the paper does not absorb too much moisture.</li> <li>If background scatter occurs on an envelope, change the printing layout to avoid printing over areas that have overlapping seams on the reverse side. Printing on seams can cause problems.</li> <li>If background scatter covers the entire surface area of a printed page, adjust the print resolution through your software application or in <b>Printing Preferences</b>. (See "Opening printing preferences" on page 61.)</li> </ul> |
| <b>Misformed characters</b><br>      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If characters are improperly formed and producing hollow images, the paper stock may be too slick. Try different paper. (See "Print media specifications" on page 133.)</li> <li>If characters are improperly formed and producing a wavy effect, the scanner unit may need service. (See "Cleaning the scan unit" on page 106.)</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |

| CONDITION                                                                                                                 | SUGGESTED SOLUTIONS                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Page skew</b><br>                     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Ensure that the paper is loaded properly.</li> <li>Check the paper type and quality. (See "Print media specifications" on page 133.)</li> <li>Ensure that the guides are not too tight or too loose against the paper stack.</li> </ul>                                                                                            |
| <b>Curl or wave</b><br>                  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Ensure that the paper is loaded properly.</li> <li>Check the paper type and quality. Both high temperature and humidity can cause paper curl. (See "Print media specifications" on page 133.)</li> <li>Turn the stack of paper over in the tray. Also try rotating the paper 180° in the tray.</li> </ul>                          |
| <b>Wrinkles or creases</b><br>          | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Ensure that the paper is loaded properly.</li> <li>Check the paper type and quality. (See "Print media specifications" on page 133.)</li> <li>Turn the stack of paper over in the tray. Also try rotating the paper 180° in the tray.</li> </ul>                                                                                   |
| <b>Back of printouts are dirty</b><br> | <p>Check for leaking toner. Clean the inside of the machine. (See "Cleaning the inside" on page 105.)</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>Solid Color or Black pages</b><br>  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The toner cartridge may not be installed properly. Remove the cartridge and reinsert it.</li> <li>The toner cartridge may be defective. Remove the toner cartridge and install a new one. (See "Replacing the toner cartridge" on page 125.)</li> <li>The machine may require repair. Contact a service representative.</li> </ul> |

| CONDITION                                                                                                          | SUGGESTED SOLUTIONS                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Loose toner</b><br>          | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Clean the inside of the machine. (See "Cleaning the inside" on page 105.)</li> <li>Check the paper type and quality. (See "Print media specifications" on page 133.)</li> <li>Remove the toner cartridge and then, install a new one. (See "Replacing the toner cartridge" on page 125.)</li> <li>If the problem persists, the machine may require repair. Contact a service representative.</li> </ul>                                                               |
| <b>Character Voids</b><br>      | <p>Character voids are white areas within parts of characters that should be solid black:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If you are using transparencies, try another type of transparency. Because of the composition of transparencies, some character voids are normal.</li> <li>You may be printing on the wrong surface of the paper. Remove the paper and turn it around.</li> <li>The paper may not meet paper specifications. (See "Print media specifications" on page 133.)</li> </ul> |
| <b>Horizontal stripes</b><br>  | <p>If horizontally aligned black streaks or smears appear:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The toner cartridge may be installed improperly. Remove the cartridge and reinsert it.</li> <li>The toner cartridge may be defective. Remove the toner cartridge and install a new one. (See "Replacing the toner cartridge" on page 125.)</li> <li>If the problem persists, the machine may require repair. Contact a service representative.</li> </ul>                                              |
| <b>Curl</b><br>               | <p>If the printed paper is curled or paper does not feed into the machine:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Turn the stack of paper over in the tray. Also try rotating the paper 180° in the tray.</li> <li>Change the printer option and try again. Go to <b>Printing Preferences</b>, click <b>Paper</b> tab, and set type to <b>Thin</b>. (See "Opening printing preferences" on page 61.)</li> </ul>                                                                                          |
| <b>An unknown image repetitively appears on a few sheets or loose toner, light print, or contamination occurs.</b> | <p>Your machine is probably being used at an altitude of 1,500 m (4,921 ft) or above. The high altitude may affect the print quality, such as loose toner or light imaging. Change the correct altitude setting to your machine. (See "Altitude adjustment" on page 49.)</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |

## Copying problems

| CONDITION                                                                        | SUGGESTED SOLUTION                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Copies are too light or too dark                                                 | Use <b>Darkness</b> in <b>Copy feature</b> to lighten or darken the backgrounds of copies. (See "Changing the darkness" on page 70.)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Smears, lines, marks, or spots appear on copies.                                 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>If the defects are on the original, use <b>Darkness</b> in <b>Copy feature</b> to lighten the background of your copies. (See "Changing the darkness" on page 70.)</li><li>If there are no defects on the original, clean the scan unit. (See "Cleaning the scan unit" on page 106.)</li></ul>                                               |
| Copy image is skewed.                                                            | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Ensure that the original is face down on the scanner glass or face up in the document feeder.</li><li>Check that the copy paper is loaded correctly.</li></ul>                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Blank copies print out.                                                          | Ensure that the original is face down on the scanner glass or face up in the document feeder.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Image rubs off the copy easily.                                                  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Replace the paper in the tray with paper from a new package.</li><li>In high humidity areas, do not leave paper in the machine for extended periods of time.</li></ul>                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Frequent copy paper jams occur.                                                  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Fan the stack of paper, then turn it over in the tray. Replace the paper in the tray with a fresh supply. Check/adjust the paper guides, if necessary.</li><li>Ensure that the paper is the proper paper weight.</li><li>Check for copy paper or pieces of copy paper remaining in the machine after a paper jam has been cleared.</li></ul> |
| Toner cartridge produces fewer copies than expected before running out of toner. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Your originals may contain pictures, solids, or heavy lines. For example, your originals may be forms, newsletters, books, or other documents that use more toner.</li><li>The scanner lid may be left open while copies are being made.</li><li>Turn the machine off and back on.</li></ul>                                                 |

## Scanning problems

| CONDITON                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | SUGGESTED SOLUTIONS                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The scanner does not work.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Make sure that you place the original to be scanned face down on the scanner glass, or face up in the document feeder.</li><li>There may not be enough available memory to hold the document you want to scan. Try the <b>Prescan</b> function to see if that works. Try lowering the scan resolution rate.</li><li>Check that the machine cable is connected properly.</li><li>Make sure that the machine cable is not defective. Switch the cable with a known good cable. If necessary, replace the cable.</li><li>Check that the scanner is configured correctly. Check scan setting in the SmarThru Office or the application you want to use to make certain that the scanner job is being sent to the correct port (for example, USB001).</li></ul> |
| The unit scans very slowly.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Check if the machine is printing received data. If so, scan the document after the received data has been printed.</li><li>Graphics are scanned more slowly than text.</li><li>Communication speed slows in scan mode because of the large amount of memory required to analyze and reproduce the scanned image. Set your computer to the ECP printer mode through BIOS setting. It will help to increase the speed. For details about how to set BIOS, refer to your computer user's guide.</li></ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Message appears on your computer screen: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Device can't be set to the H/W mode you want.</li><li>Port is being used by another program.</li><li>Port is Disabled.</li><li>Scanner is busy receiving or printing data. When the current job is completed., try again.</li><li>Invalid handle.</li><li>Scanning has failed.</li></ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>There may be a copying or printing job in progress. Try your job again when that job is finished.</li><li>The selected port is currently being used. Restart your computer and try again.</li><li>The machine cable may be improperly connected or the power may be off.</li><li>The scanner driver is not installed or the operating environment is not set up properly.</li><li>Ensure that the machine is properly connected and the power is on, then restart your computer.</li><li>The USB cable may be improperly connected or the power may be off.</li></ul>                                                                                                                                                                                      |



Fax problems

| CONDITION                                                                        | SUGGESTED SOLUTIONS                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The machine is not working, there is no display, or the buttons are not working. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Unplug the power cord and plug it in again.</li><li>Ensure that there is power being supplied to the electrical outlet.</li></ul>                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| No dial tone.                                                                    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Check that the phone line is properly connected.</li><li>Check that the phone socket on the wall is working by plugging in another phone.</li></ul>                                                                                                                                                                        |
| The numbers stored in memory do not dial correctly.                              | Make sure that the numbers are stored in memory correctly. Print a <b>Address Book</b> list. (See "Setting up address book" on page 86.)                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| The original does not feed into the machine.                                     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Make sure that the paper is not wrinkled and you are inserting it in correctly. Check that the original is the right size, not too thick or thin.</li><li>Make sure that the document feeder is firmly closed.</li><li>The document feeder rubber pad may need to be replaced. Contact a service representative.</li></ul> |
| Faxes are not received automatically.                                            | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>The receiving mode should be set to fax.</li><li>Make sure that there is paper in the tray.</li><li>Check to see if the display shows any error message. If it does, clear the problem</li></ul>                                                                                                                           |
| The machine does not send.                                                       | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Make sure that the original is loaded in the document feeder or on the scanner glass.</li><li>Check the fax machine you are sending to, to see if it can receive your fax.</li></ul>                                                                                                                                       |
| The incoming fax has blank spaces or is of poor-quality.                         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>The fax machine sending you the fax may be faulty.</li><li>A noisy phone line can cause line errors.</li><li>Check your machine by making a copy.</li><li>The toner cartridge may be empty. Replace the toner cartridge. (See "Replacing the toner cartridge" on page 125.)</li></ul>                                      |
| Some of the words on an incoming fax are stretched.                              | The fax machine sending the fax had a temporary document jam.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| There are lines on the originals you sent.                                       | Check your scan unit for marks and clean it. (See "Cleaning the scan unit" on page 106.)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |

| CONDITION                                                                                              | SUGGESTED SOLUTIONS                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The machine dials a number, but the connection with the other fax machine fails.                       | The other fax machine may be turned off, out of paper, or cannot answer incoming calls. Speak with the other machine operator and ask her/him to solve out the problem.                                               |
| Faxes do not store in memory.                                                                          | There may not be enough memory space to store the fax. If the display indicating the memory status shows, delete any faxes you no longer need from the memory, and then try to store the fax again. Call for service. |
| Blank areas appear at the bottom of each page or on other pages, with a small strip of text at the top | You may have chosen the wrong paper settings in the user option setting. For details about paper settings. (See "Setting the paper size and type" on page 59.)                                                        |

Samsung Scan Manager Problem

| CONDITION                           | SUGGESTED SOLUTION                                                                                                         |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Samsung Scan Manager does not work. | Check your system requirements. Samsung Scan Manager works in Window and Macintosh (See "System requirements" on page 33.) |

Common PostScript problems

The following situations are PS language specific and may occur when several printer languages are used.

| PROBLEM                            | POSSIBLE CAUSE                                        | SOLUTION                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| PostScript file cannot be printed. | The PostScript driver may not be installed correctly. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Install the PostScript driver. (See "Installing USB connected machine's driver" on page 34.)</li><li>Print a configuration page and verify that the PS version is available for printing.</li><li>If the problem persists, contact a service representative.</li></ul> |
| “Limit Check Error” report prints. | The print job was too complex.                        | You might need to reduce the complexity of the page or install more memory. (See "Installing a memory module" on page 126.)                                                                                                                                                                                  |



| PROBLEM                                                                                            | POSSIBLE CAUSE                                                                                  | SOLUTION                                                                                                                                                              |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| A PostScript error page prints.                                                                    | The print job may not be PostScript.                                                            | Make sure that the print job is a PostScript job. Check to see whether the software application expected a setup or PostScript header file to be sent to the machine. |
| The optional tray is not selected in the driver.                                                   | The printer driver has not been configured to recognize the optional tray.                      | Open the PostScript driver properties, select the <b>Device Settings</b> tab, and set the tray option of the <b>Installable Options</b> section to <b>Installed</b> . |
| When printing a document in Macintosh with Acrobat Reader 6.0 or higher, colors print incorrectly. | The resolution setting in the printer driver may not be matched with the one in Acrobat Reader. | Make sure that the resolution setting in your printer driver matches the one in Acrobat Reader.                                                                       |

## Common Windows problems

| CONDITION                                                                                       | SUGGESTED SOLUTIONS                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| "File in Use" message appears during installation.                                              | Exit all software applications. Remove all software from the printer's startup group, then restart Windows. Reinstall the printer driver.                                                                                                 |
| "General Protection Fault", "Exception OE", "Spool 32", or "Illegal Operation" messages appear. | Close all other applications, reboot Windows and try printing again.                                                                                                                                                                      |
| "Fail To Print", "A printer timeout error occurred" messages appear.                            | These messages may appear during printing. Just keep waiting until the machine finishes printing. If the message appears in standby mode or after printing has been completed, check the connection and/or whether an error has occurred. |


 Refer to Microsoft Windows User's Guide that came with your computer for further information on Windows error messages.

## Common Linux problems


| CONDITION                                                                       | SUGGESTED SOLUTIONS                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The machine does not print.                                                     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check if the printer driver is installed in your system. Open Unified Driver Configurator and switch to the <b>Printers</b> tab in <b>Printers configuration</b> window to look at the list of available machines. Make sure that your machine is displayed on the list. If not, open <b>Add new printer wizard</b> to set up your device.</li> <li>Check if the machine is started. Open <b>Printers configuration</b> and select your machine on the printers list. Look at the description in the <b>Selected printer</b> pane. If its status contains <b>Stopped</b> string, press the <b>Start</b> button. After that normal operation of the machine should be restored. The "stopped" status might be activated when some problems in printing occurred. For instance, this could be an attempt to print a document when the port is claimed by a scanning application.</li> <li>Ensure the port is not busy. Since functional components of machine (printer and scanner) share the same I/O interface (port), the situation of simultaneous access of different "consumer" applications to the same port is possible. To avoid possible conflicts, only one of them at a time is allowed to gain control over the device. The other "consumer" will encounter "device busy" response. You should open ports configuration and select the port assigned to your machine. In the <b>Selected port</b> pane you can see if the port is occupied by some other application. If this is the case, you should either wait for completion of the current job or press the <b>Release port</b> button, if you are sure that the present application is not functioning properly.</li> <li>Check if your application has special print option such as "-oraw". If "-oraw" is specified in the command line parameter, then remove it to print properly. For Gimp front-end, select "print" -&gt; "Setup printer" and edit command line parameter in the command item.</li> <li>The CUPS (Common Unix Printing System) version distributed with SuSE Linux 9.2 (cups-1.1.21) has a problem with ipp (Internet Printing Protocol) printing. Use the socket printing instead of ipp or install a later version of CUPS (cups-1.1.22 or higher).</li> </ul> |
| The machine does not print whole pages, and output is printed on half the page. | It is a known problem that occurs when a color machine is used on version 8.51 or earlier of Ghostscript, 64-bit Linux OS, and has been reported to bugs.ghostscript.com as Ghostscript Bug 688252. The problem is solved in AFPL Ghostscript v. 8.52 or above. Download the latest version of AFPL Ghostscript from <a href="http://sourceforge.net/projects/ghostscript/">http://sourceforge.net/projects/ghostscript/</a> and install it to solve this problem.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |


| CONDITION                                                                  | SUGGESTED SOLUTIONS                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| I cannot scan via Gimp Front-end.                                          | <p>Check if Gimp Front-end has Xsane:<b>Device dialog</b>. on the <b>Acquire</b> menu. If not, you should install Xsane plug-in for Gimp on the your computer. You can find Xsane plug-in package for Gimp on Linux distribution CD or Gimp home page. For the detailed information, refer to the Help for Linux distribution CD or Gimp Front-end application.</p> <p>If you wish to use another kind of scan application, refer to application's Help.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| I encounter error "Cannot open port device file" when printing a document. | <p>Avoid changing print job parameters (via LPR GUI, for example) while a print job is in progress. Known versions of CUPS server break the print job whenever print options are changed and then try to restart the job from the beginning. Since Unified Linux Driver locks the port while printing, the abrupt termination of the driver keeps the port locked and unavailable for subsequent print jobs. If this situation occurs, try to release the port by selecting <b>Release port</b> in <b>Port configuration</b> window.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| The machine does not appear on the scanners list.                          | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Ensure your machine is attached to your computer, connected properly via the USB port, and is turned on.</li> <li>Ensure the scanner driver for your machine is installed in your system. Open Unified Linux Driver configurator, switch to <b>Scanners configuration</b>, then press <b>Drivers</b>. Make sure that driver with a name corresponding to your machine's name is listed in the window.</li> <li>Ensure the port is not busy. Since functional components of machine (printer and scanner) share the same I/O interface (port), the situation of simultaneous access of different "consumer" applications to the same port is possible. To avoid possible conflicts, only one of them at a time is allowed to gain control over the device. The other "consumer" will encounter "device busy" response. This usually happens when starting a scan procedure. An appropriate message box appears.</li> </ul> <p>To identify the source of the problem, open the <b>Ports configuration</b> and select the port assigned to your scanner, port's symbol /dev/mfp0 corresponds to LP:0 designation displayed in the scanners' options, /dev/mfp1 relates to LP:1, and so on. USB ports start at /dev/mfp4, so scanner on USB:0 relates to /dev/mfp4 respectively and so forth sequentially. In the <b>Selected port</b> pane, you can see if the port is occupied by another application. If this is the case, you should either wait for completion of the current job or press the <b>Release port</b> button, if you are sure that the present port applicaton is not functioning properly.</p> |

| CONDITION                  | SUGGESTED SOLUTIONS                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The machine does not scan. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Ensure a document is loaded into the machine, ensure your machine is connected to the computer.</li> <li>If there is an I/O error while scanning.</li> </ul> |

 Refer to Linux User's Guide that came with your computer for further information on Linux error messages.

### Common Macintosh problems

| CONDITION                                                                                                   | SUGGESTED SOLUTIONS                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The machine does not print PDF files correctly. Some parts of graphics, text, or illustrations are missing. | <p>Printing the PDF file as an image may enable the file to print. Turn on <b>Print As Image</b> from the Acrobat printing options.</p> <p> It will take longer to print when you print a PDF file as an image.</p> |
| The document has printed, but the print job has not disappeared from the spooler in Mac OS X10.3.2.         | <p>Update your MAC OS to OS MAC OS X 10.3.3. or higher.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Some letters are not displayed normally during the cover page printing.                                     | <p>Mac OS cannot create the font during the cover page printing. The English alphabet and numbers are displayed normally on the cover page.</p>                                                                                                                                                        |
| When printing a document in Macintosh with Acrobat Reader 6.0 or higher, colors print incorrectly.          | <p>Make sure that the resolution setting in your machine driver matches the one in Acrobat Reader.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                 |


 Refer to Macintosh User's Guide that came with your computer for further information on Macintosh error messages.

# supplies and accessories

This chapter provides information on purchasing supplies, accessories and maintenance parts available for your machine.

**This chapter includes:**

- How to purchase
- Available supplies
- Available accessories
- Available maintenance parts
- Replacing the toner cartridge

 Available accessories may differ from country to country. Contact your sales representatives to obtain the list of available accessories.

## HOW TO PURCHASE

To order Samsung-authorized supplies, accessories and, maintenance parts, contact your local Samsung dealer or the retailer where you purchased your machine. You can also visit [www.samsung.com/supplies](http://www.samsung.com/supplies), select your country/region, and obtain information on calling for service.


## AVAILABLE SUPPLIES


When supplies reach their lifespan, you can order the following types of supplies for your machine:

| TYPE           | AVERAGE YIELD <sup>a</sup> | PART NAME                                                                                              |
|----------------|----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Standard yield | Approx. 4,000 pages        | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• MLT-D208S</li><li>• Region A<sup>b</sup>: MLT-D2082S</li></ul> |
| High yield     | Approx. 10,000 pages       | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• MLT-D208L</li><li>• Region A<sup>b</sup>: MLT-D2082L</li></ul> |

- a. Declared yield value in accordance with ISO/IEC 19752.
- b. Region A: Albania, Austria, Belgium, Bosnia, Bulgaria, Croatia, Cyprus, Czech Republic, Denmark, Finland, France, Germany, Greece, Hungary, Italy, Macedonia, Netherlands, Norway, Poland, Portugal, Romania, Serbia, Slovakia, Slovenia, Spain, Sweden, Switzerland, UK.

To replace a toner cartridge: (See "Replacing the toner cartridge" on page 125.)

 Depending on the options and job mode used, the toner cartridge's lifespan may differ.

 You must purchase supplies, including toner cartridges, in the same country where you purchased your machine. Otherwise, supplies will be incompatible with your machine since the system configuration of these vary from country to country.

- Necessary precautions to take when installing accessories
- Upgrading a memory module
- Checking replaceable's lifespan
- Replacing the document feeder rubber pad

## AVAILABLE ACCESSORIES

You can purchase and install accessories to enhance your machine's performance and capacity.

| ACCESSORY                    | FUNCTION                                                                                                                                                                    | PART NAME                                                                                         |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Memory module                | Extend your machine's memory capacity.                                                                                                                                      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• CLP-MEM202: 256 MB</li><li>• CLP-MEM201: 128 MB</li></ul> |
| Optional tray 2              | If you are experiencing frequent paper supply problems, you can attach an additional 250 sheet tray. You can print documents in various sizes and types of print materials. | SCX-S5635A                                                                                        |
| JScribe                      | The port feature here is the serial port, embedded within your machine, which enables your machine to be connected to an external device using JScribe technology.          | SCX-KIT10J                                                                                        |
| IEEE 802.11 b/g Wireless LAN | Allows you to connect your printer to a wireless network.                                                                                                                   | ML-NWA30L                                                                                         |

## AVAILABLE MAINTENANCE PARTS

To avoid print quality and paper feed problems resulting from worn parts and to maintain your machine in top working condition, the following parts will need to be replaced after printing the specified number of pages or when the life span of each item has expired.

| PARTS                      | AVERAGE YIELD <sup>a</sup> | PART NAME       |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------|
| Document feeder rubber pad | Approx. 20,000 pages       | RMO ADF RUBBER  |
| Transfer roller            | Approx. 70,000 pages       | ROLLER-TRANSFER |


| PARTS           | AVERAGE YIELD <sup>a</sup> | PART NAME        |
|-----------------|----------------------------|------------------|
| Fuser unit      | Approx. 80,000 pages       | ELA UNIT-FUSER   |
| Tray rubber pad | Approx. 150,000 pages      | RPR-PAD CASSETTE |
| Pickup roller   | Approx. 150,000 pages      | ROLLER-PICK UP   |

a. It will be affected by operating system used, computing performance, application software, connecting method, media type, media size and job complexity.

To purchase maintenance parts, contact the source where you bought the machine.

Replacing maintenance parts can be performed only by an authorized service provider, dealer, or the retailer where you bought the machine. The warranty does not cover the replacement of any maintenance parts after their lifespan.

### REPLACING THE TONER CARTRIDGE

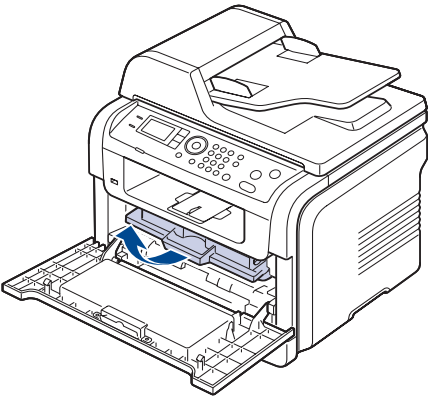
 Click this link to open an animation about replacing a toner cartridge.

When the toner cartridge is empty:

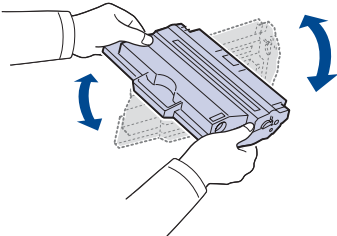
- **Toner is empty. Replace with new one** appears on the display.
- The machine stops printing. Incoming faxes are saved in memory.


At this stage, the toner cartridge needs to be replaced. Check the type of the toner cartridge for your machine. (See "Available supplies" on page 124.)


1. Open the front door.
2. Pull the toner cartridge out.



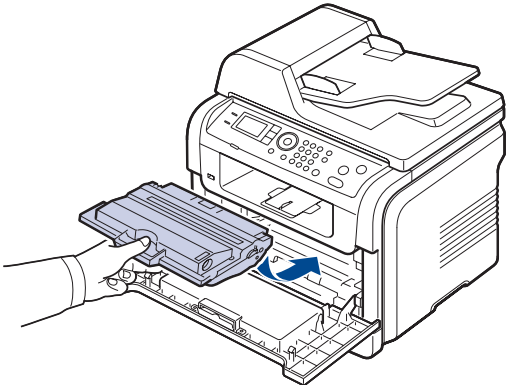
3. Remove the new toner cartridge from its bag.
4. Slowly shake the cartridge five or six times to distribute the toner evenly inside the cartridge. It will assure maximum copies per cartridge.



 If toner gets on your clothing, wipe it off with a dry cloth and wash clothing in cold water. Hot water sets toner into fabric.

 Do not touch the green underside of the toner cartridge. Use the handle on the cartridge to avoid touching this area.


5. Hold the toner cartridge by the handle and slowly insert the cartridge into the opening in the machine.  
Tabs on the sides of the cartridge and corresponding grooves within the machine will guide the cartridge into the correct position until it locks into place completely.



6. Close the front door. Make sure that the cover is securely closed.

### NECESSARY PRECAUTIONS TO TAKE WHEN INSTALLING ACCESSORIES

- Disconnect the power cord.  
Never remove the control board cover while the power is turned on. To avoid the possibility of an electrical shock, always disconnect the power cord when installing or removing ANY internal or external accessories.
- Discharge static electricity.  
The control board and internal accessories (network interface card or memory module) are sensitive to static electricity. Before installing or removing any internal accessories, discharge static electricity from your body by touching something metal, such as the metal back plate on any device plugged into a grounded power source. If you walk around before finishing the installation, repeat this procedure to discharge any static electricity again.
- Activating the added accessories in the PS driver properties.  
After installing an accessory such as an optional tray, PS driver users must do the additional setting. Go to the PS printer properties and set the added accessory activated.

 When installing accessories, the battery inside the machine is a service component. Do not change it by yourself.  
There is a risk of an explosion if battery is replaced by an incorrect type. Dispose used batteries according to the instructions.

### UPGRADING A MEMORY MODULE

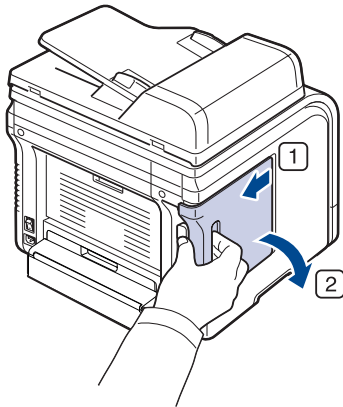
Your machine has a dual in-line memory module (DIMM). Use this memory module slot to install additional memory.

The machine has two memory slots with a factory pre-installed memory module in one slot. When you are expanding the memory capacity, you can add a memory module to the vacant memory slot. It is strongly recommended that you expand a memory module in the vacant memory slot, and not by removing a pre-installed memory module. Your machine

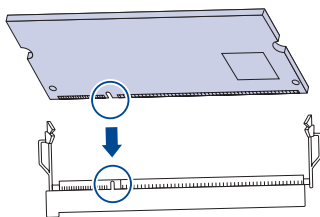
has 128 MB memory capacity and you can add 128 or 256 MB, in that case, the memory capacity expand up to 384 MB. Order information is provided for additional memory module. (See "Available accessories" on page 124.)

## Installing a memory module

1. Turn the machine off and unplug all cables from the machine.
2. Grasp the control board cover and remove it.



3. Remove the new memory module from its bag.
4. Holding the memory module by the edges, align the memory module on the slot at about a 30-degree tilt. Make sure that the notches of the module and the grooves on the slot fit each other.



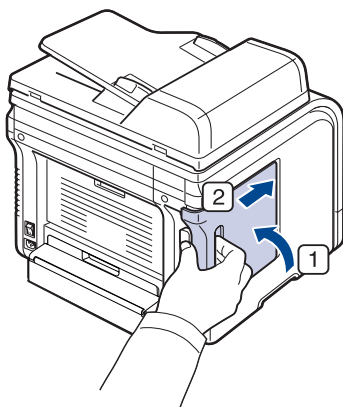
The notches and grooves illustrated above may not match those on an actual memory module and its slot.

5. Press the memory module into the slot with care until you hear a 'click'.



Do not press the memory module strongly or the module may be damaged. If the module does not seem to fit into the slot properly, carefully try the previous procedure again.

6. Close the control board cover by aligning the groove on it with the notch on the machine and sliding it.



7. Reconnect the power cord and machine cable. Turn on the machine.



If you use the PS driver, you must activate the added memory in the PS driver properties.

## Activating the added accessories in PS printer properties

After installing the memory module, you need to select it in the printer properties of the PostScript printer driver in order to use it.

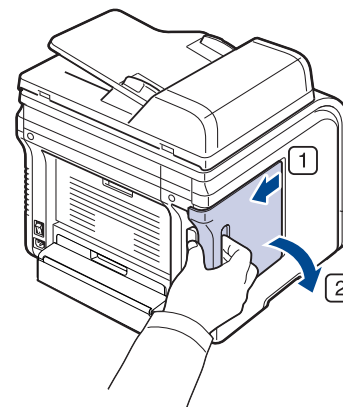
1. Install the PS Driver. (See "Installing USB connected machine's driver" on page 34.)
2. Click the Windows **Start** menu.
  - For Windows 2000, select **Settings > Printers**.
  - For Windows XP/2003, select **Printers and Faxes**.
  - For Windows Vista, select **Control Panel > Hardware and Sound > Printers**.
3. Select the your machine's PS driver and right-click to open **Properties**.
4. Select **Device Settings**.
5. Select the **Installable Options** section and set the necessary options.
6. Click **OK**.

## INSTALLING A WIRELESS NETWORK INTERFACE CARD

The machine is equipped with a network interface which allows you to use your machine on a network. You can also purchase a wireless network interface card to enable the use of the machine in wireless network environments.

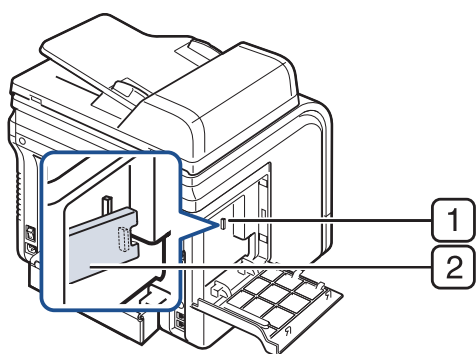
### Installing a wireless network interface card

1. Turn the machine off and unplug all cables from the machine.
2. Grasp the control board cover and remove it.



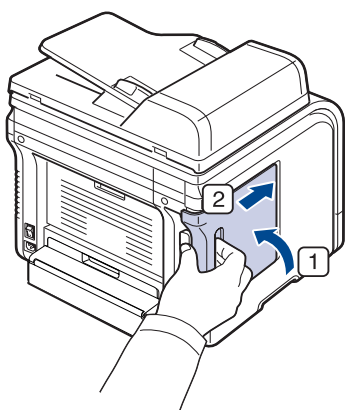
3. Take out a new wireless interface card from its bag.
4. Align the connector on the wireless interface card with the connector on the control board.  
Push the wireless interface card firmly into the connector until it is completely and securely in place.





- 1 Connector
- 2 Wireless interface card

5. Close the control board cover by aligning the groove on it with the notch on the machine and sliding it.



6. Plug back all the cables to the machine, and turn the machine on.
7. Set the wireless network environment. (See "Using a wireless network" on page 42.)

## CHECKING REPLACEABLE'S LIFESPAN

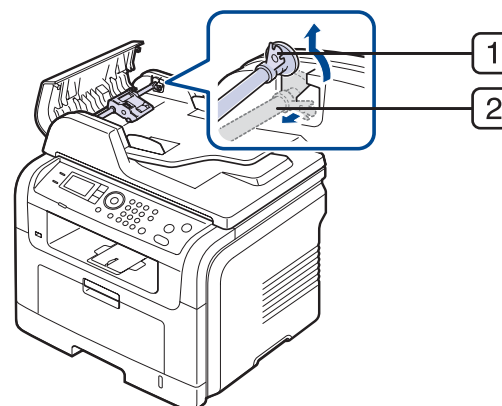
If you experience frequent paper jams or printing problems, check the number of pages the machine has printed. Replace the corresponding parts, if necessary.

1. Press **Menu** on the control panel.
2. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **System Setup** and press **OK**.
3. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Maintenance** and press **OK**.
4. Press the up/down arrow to highlight **Supplies Life** and press **OK**.
5. Press the up/down arrow until the item you want appears and press **OK**.
  - **Supplies Info**: Prints the supply information page.
  - **Total**: Displays the total number of pages printed.
  - **ADF Scan**: Displays the number of pages scanned using the ADF.
  - **Platen Scan**: Displays the number of pages scanned using the scanner glass.
  - **Transfer Belt**: Displays the number of pages printed using the transfer belt.
6. Press **Stop/Clear** to return to ready mode.

## REPLACING THE DOCUMENT FEEDER RUBBER PAD

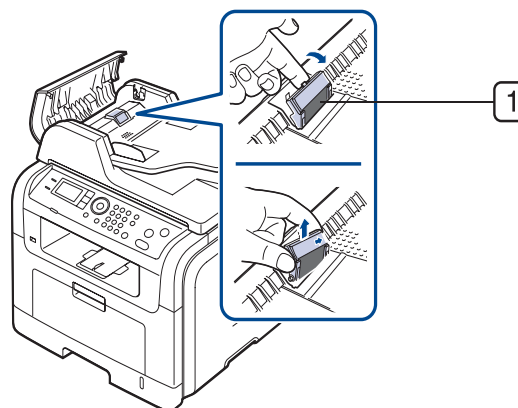
You will need to replace the document feeder rubber pad when there seems to be a consistent problem with paper pickup or when its specified yield is reached.

1. Open the document feeder cover.
2. Rotate the bushing on the right end of the document feeder roller toward the document feeder and remove the roller from the slot.



- 1 Bushing
- 2 Document feeder roller

3. Remove the document feeder rubber pad from the document feeder, as shown.

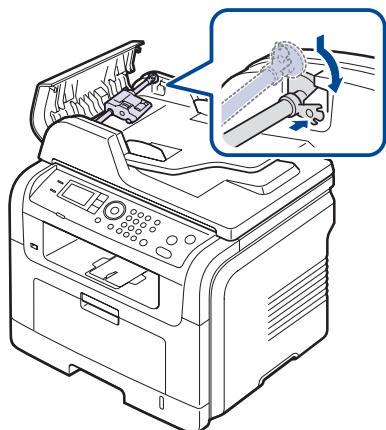


- 1 Document feeder rubber pad

4. Insert a new document feeder rubber pad into place.



5. Align the left end of the document feeder roller with the slot and push the right end of the roller into the right slot. Rotate the bushing on the right end of the roller toward the document input tray.



6. Close the document feeder cover.

# specifications

This chapter guides you about this machine’s specifications such as various features.

**This chapter include:**

- General specifications
- Printer specifications
- Scanner specifications
- Copier specifications
- Facsimile specifications
- Print media specifications

## GENERAL SPECIFICATIONS

 The symbol \* optional feature depending on machines.

| ITEM                                            | DESCRIPTION                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                      |
|-------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Document feeder capacity                        | Up to 50 sheets 80 g/m <sup>2</sup> (20 lb bond)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Document feeder document size                   | Width: 142 to 216 mm (5.6 x 8.5 inches)/ Length: 148 to 356 mm (5.8 x 14 inches)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Paper input capacity                            | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>Tray</b>: 250 sheets for plain paper, 80 g/m<sup>2</sup> (20 lb bond)</li><li>• <b>Multi-purpose tray</b>: 50 sheets for plain paper, 80 g/m<sup>2</sup> (20 lb bond)</li><li>• <b>Optional tray</b>: 250 sheets for plain paper, 80 g/m<sup>2</sup> (20 lb bond)</li></ul> ( See "Print media specifications" on page 133.) |                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Paper output capacity                           | Output tray                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Face down: 150 sheets 75 g/m <sup>2</sup> (20 lb bond)                                                                                                               |
|                                                 | Rear door                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Face up: 1 sheet 80 g/m <sup>2</sup> (20 lb bond)                                                                                                                    |
| Power rating                                    | AC 110 - 127 V or AC 220 - 240 V<br>See the Rating label on the machine for the correct voltage, frequency (hertz) and type of current for your machine.                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Power consumption                               | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>Average operating mode</b>: Less than 600 W</li><li>• <b>Ready mode</b>: Less than 80 W</li><li>• <b>Power Save mode</b>: Less than 18 W</li><li>• <b>Power off mode</b>: 1 W</li></ul>                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Noise Level <sup>a</sup>                        | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>Ready mode</b>: 26 dBA (Initial), 39 dBA (Long Term)</li><li>• <b>Printing mode</b>: 52 dBA</li><li>• <b>Copying mode</b>: 54 dBA</li></ul>                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Default time to power save mode from ready mode | 30 Minutes                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Boot-up time <sup>b</sup>                       | Less than 55 seconds                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Operating environment                           | Temperature: 10 to 32 °C (50 to 90 °F)<br>Humidity: 20 to 80% RH                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Display                                         | 4-Line graphic LCD                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Toner cartridge life <sup>c</sup>               | Standard yield                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Average Cartridge Yield 4,000 standard pages.<br>Declared yield value in accordance with ISO/IEC<br>(Shipped with 4,000 pages Starter toner cartridge.) <sup>d</sup> |
|                                                 | High yield                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Average Cartridge Yield 10,000 standard pages.<br>Declared yield value in accordance with ISO/IEC                                                                    |
| Memory (Expandable)*                            | 128 MB (Max. 384 MB)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                      |

| ITEM                              | DESCRIPTION                                                           |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| External dimension<br>(W x D x H) | 466 x 435 x 458 mm<br>(18.3 x 17.1 x 18 inches) without optional tray |
| Weight<br>(Including consumables) | 18.8 Kg (41.45 lbs)                                                   |
| Package weight                    | Paper: 3.4 Kg (7.42 lbs)<br>Plastic: 1.1 Kg (2.42 lbs)                |
| Duty cycle                        | Up to 35,000 pages (Monthly)                                          |
| Fusing temperature                | 180 °C (356 °F)                                                       |

- a. Sound Pressure Level, ISO 7779. Configuration tested: machine basic installation, A4 paper, simplex printing.
- b.Boot-up time is the time that takes from the power switch on to the ready mode.
- c. Declared yield value in accordance with ISO/IEC 19752. The number of pages may be affected by operating environment, printing interval, media type, and media size.
- d. It varies depending on the product configuration.

## PRINTER SPECIFICATIONS

| ITEM                          | DESCRIPTION                                                                                                                                                                    |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Printing method               | Laser beam printing                                                                                                                                                            |
| Printing speed <sup>a</sup>   | Up to 33 ppm (A4), 35 ppm (Letter)                                                                                                                                             |
| Duplex printing speed         | Up to 17 ipm (A4), 18 ipm (Letter)                                                                                                                                             |
| First print out time          | 8.5 seconds (from ready)                                                                                                                                                       |
| Print resolution              | Up to 1,200 x 1,200 dpi effective output                                                                                                                                       |
| Printer language              | PCL5e, PCL6, PostScript 3, PDF1.4, TIFF, Epson/IBM Pro (Israel only), KS/KSSM (Korea only)                                                                                     |
| OS compatibility <sup>b</sup> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Windows: 2000/XP/2003/2008/Vista</li> <li>Various Linux OS ( See "Linux" on page 34.)</li> <li>Macintosh: Mac OS X 10.3~10.5</li> </ul> |
| Interface                     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>High speed USB 2.0</li> <li>Ethernet 10/100 Base TX (Embedded type)</li> <li>802.11 b/g Wireless LAN (Optional)</li> </ul>              |

- a. It will be affected by operating system used, computing performance, application software, connecting method, media type, media size and job complexity.
- b. Visit [www.samsungprinter.com](http://www.samsungprinter.com) to download the latest software version.

## SCANNER SPECIFICATIONS

| ITEM                      | DESCRIPTION                                                                  |                                                                       |
|---------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Compatibility             | TWAIN standard/WIA standard                                                  |                                                                       |
| Scanning method           | Color CCD                                                                    |                                                                       |
| Resolution <sup>a</sup>   | TWAIN standard                                                               | Up to 600 x 600 dpi (Up to 4,800 x 4,800 dpi by software enhancement) |
|                           | WIA standard                                                                 | Up to 600 x 600 dpi                                                   |
|                           | Scan to USB                                                                  | 100, 200, 300 dpi                                                     |
|                           | Scan to PC                                                                   | 75, 150, 200, 300, 600 dpi                                            |
|                           | Scan to Email<br>Scan to FTP<br>Scan to SMB                                  | 100, 200, 300dpi                                                      |
| Network Scan File format  | PDF, TIFF, JPEG <sup>b</sup>                                                 |                                                                       |
| Effective scanning length | Scanner glass: 297 mm (11.7 inches)<br>Document feeder: 348 mm (13.7 inches) |                                                                       |
| Effective scanning width  | Max. 208 mm (8.2 inches)                                                     |                                                                       |
| Color bit depth           | 24 bit                                                                       |                                                                       |
| Mono bit depth            | 1 bit for lineart & halftone<br>8 bit for gray scale                         |                                                                       |

a. Due to the applications for scanning, the maximum resolution might differ.


b. JPEG is not available when you select the mono mode in scan color.

## COPIER SPECIFICATIONS

| ITEM                    | DESCRIPTION                                                                        |                                                                            |
|-------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Copy Speed <sup>a</sup> | Up to 33 cpm (A4), 35 cpm (Letter)                                                 |                                                                            |
| First copy out time     | Scanner glass: 10 seconds (from ready)<br>Document feeder: 13 seconds (from ready) |                                                                            |
| Copy resolution         | Text                                                                               | Scanner glass: Up to 300 x 300 dpi<br>Document feeder: Up to 300 x 300 dpi |
|                         | Text/photo                                                                         | Scanner glass: Up to 300 x 300 dpi<br>Document feeder: Up to 300 x 300 dpi |
|                         | Photo                                                                              | Scanner glass: Up to 600 x 600 dpi<br>Document feeder: Up to 300 x 300 dpi |
| Zoom range              | Scanner glass: 25% to 400%<br>Document feeder: 25% to 200%                         |                                                                            |

a. Copy speed is based on Single Document Multiple Copy.

# FACSIMILE SPECIFICATIONS

 The fax feature may not be supported depending on machines.

| ITEM                    | DESCRIPTION                                                                                                                                                     |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Compatibility           | ITU-T G3                                                                                                                                                        |
| Applicable line         | Public Switched Telephone Network (PSTN) or behind PABX                                                                                                         |
| Data coding             | MH/MR/MMR/JBIG/JPEG                                                                                                                                             |
| Modem speed             | 33.6 Kbps                                                                                                                                                       |
| Transmission speed      | Up to 3 seconds/page <sup>a</sup>                                                                                                                               |
| Maximum document length | 356 mm (14 inches)                                                                                                                                              |
| Resolution              | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>Standard:</b> 203 x 98 dpi</li><li>• <b>Fine:</b> 203 x 196 dpi</li><li>• <b>Super Fine:</b> 300 x 300 dpi</li></ul> |
| Memory                  | 4 MB                                                                                                                                                            |
| Halftone                | 256 levels                                                                                                                                                      |
| Auto dialer             | up to 200 numbers                                                                                                                                               |

a. Standard resolution, MMR(JBIG), Maximum modem speed, Phase “C” by ITU-T No. 1 chart, Memory Tx, ECM.

PRINT MEDIA SPECIFICATIONS

| TYPE                  | SIZE                             | DIMENSIONS                            | PRINT MEDIA WEIGHT <sup>a</sup> /CAPACITY <sup>b</sup>                                           |                                                                                                  |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                       |                                  |                                       | TRAY1 / OPTIONAL TRAY                                                                            | MULTIPURPOSE TRAY                                                                                |
| Plain paper           | Letter                           | 215.9 x 279 mm (8.5 x 11 inches)      | 60 to 90 g/m <sup>2</sup> (16 to 24 lb bond)<br>• 250 sheets of 80g/m <sup>2</sup> (20 lb bond)  | 60 to 163 g/m <sup>2</sup> (16 to 43 lb bond)<br>• 50 sheets of 80 g/m <sup>2</sup> (20 lb bond) |
|                       | Legal                            | 215.9 x 355.6 mm (8.5 x 14 inches)    |                                                                                                  |                                                                                                  |
|                       | US Folio                         | 216 x 330 mm (8.5 x 13 inches)        |                                                                                                  |                                                                                                  |
|                       | A4                               | 210 x 297 mm (8.27 x 11.69 inches)    |                                                                                                  |                                                                                                  |
|                       | Oficio                           | 215.9 x 342.9 mm (8.5 x 13.5 inches)  |                                                                                                  |                                                                                                  |
|                       | JIS B5                           | 182 x 257 mm (7.17 x 10.12 inches)    | 60 to 90 g/m <sup>2</sup> (16 to 24 lb bond)<br>• 150 sheets of 80 g/m <sup>2</sup> (20 lb bond) |                                                                                                  |
|                       | ISO B5                           | 176 x 250 mm (6.93 x 9.84 inches)     |                                                                                                  |                                                                                                  |
|                       | Executive                        | 184.2 x 266.7 mm (7.25 x 10.5 inches) |                                                                                                  |                                                                                                  |
|                       | A5                               | 148.5 x 210 mm (5.85 x 8.27 inches)   |                                                                                                  |                                                                                                  |
|                       | A6                               | 105 x 148.5 mm (4.13 x 5.85 inches)   | Not available in tray1 / optional tray                                                           |                                                                                                  |
| Envelope              | Envelope Monarch                 | 98.4 x 190.5 mm (3.88 x 7.5 inches)   | Not available in tray1 / optional tray                                                           | 75 to 90 g/m <sup>2</sup> (20 to 24 lb bond)<br>• 5 sheets stacking                              |
|                       | Envelope No. 10                  | 105 x 241 mm (4.12 x 9.5 inches)      |                                                                                                  |                                                                                                  |
|                       | Envelope DL                      | 110 x 220 mm (4.33 x 8.66 inches)     |                                                                                                  |                                                                                                  |
|                       | Envelope C5                      | 162 x 229 mm (6.38 x 9.02 inches)     |                                                                                                  |                                                                                                  |
|                       | Envelope C6                      | 114 x 162 mm (4.49 x 6.38 inches)     |                                                                                                  |                                                                                                  |
| Thick paper           | Refer to the Plain paper section | Refer to the Plain paper section      | 90 to 105 g/m <sup>2</sup> (24 to 28 lb bond)                                                    | 90 to 105 g/m <sup>2</sup> (24 to 28 lb bond)                                                    |
| Thin paper            | Refer to the Plain paper section | Refer to the Plain paper section      | 60 to 70 g/m <sup>2</sup> (16 to 19 lb bond)                                                     | 60 to 70 g/m <sup>2</sup> (16 to 19 lb bond)                                                     |
| Transparency          | Letter, A4                       | Refer to the Plain paper section      | Not available in tray1 / optional tray                                                           | 138 to 146 g/m <sup>2</sup> (36.81 to 38.91 lb bond)<br>• 5 sheets stacking                      |
| Labels <sup>c</sup>   | Refer to the Plain paper section | Refer to the Plain paper section      | Not available in tray1 / optional tray                                                           | 120 to 150 g/m <sup>2</sup> (32 to 40 lb bond)<br>• 5 sheets stacking                            |
| Card stock            | Refer to the Plain paper section | Refer to the Plain paper section      | Not available in tray1 / optional tray                                                           | 105 to 163 g/m <sup>2</sup> ( 28 to 43lb bond)<br>• 5 sheets stacking                            |
| Minimum size (custom) |                                  | 76.2 x 127 mm (3 x 5 inches)          | Not available in tray1 / optional tray                                                           | 60 to 163 g/m <sup>2</sup> (16 to 43 lb bond)                                                    |
| Maximum size (custom) |                                  | 216 x 356 mm (8.5 x 14 inches)        |                                                                                                  |                                                                                                  |

a. If media weight is over 90 g/m<sup>2</sup> (24 lb bond), use the multi-purpose tray.

b. Maximum capacity may differ depending on media weight, thickness, and environmental conditions.

c. Smoothness: 100 to 250 (sheffield)



# contact samsung worldwide

If you have any comments or questions regarding Samsung products, contact the Samsung customer care center.

| COUNTRY/REGION        | CUSTOMER CARE CENTER                                                                                                    | WEB SITE              |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| <b>ARGENTINE</b>      | 0800-333-3733                                                                                                           | www.samsung.com/ar    |
| <b>AUSTRALIA</b>      | 1300 362 603                                                                                                            | www.samsung.com/au    |
| <b>AUSTRIA</b>        | 0810-SAMSUNG (7267864, € 0.07/min)                                                                                      | www.samsung.com/at    |
| <b>BELGIUM</b>        | 02 201 2418                                                                                                             | www.samsung.com/be    |
| <b>BRAZIL</b>         | 0800-124-421<br>4004-0000                                                                                               | www.samsung.com/br    |
| <b>CANADA</b>         | 1-800-SAMSUNG (726-7864)                                                                                                | www.samsung.com/ca    |
| <b>CHILE</b>          | 800-SAMSUNG (726-7864)                                                                                                  | www.samsung.com/cl    |
| <b>CHINA</b>          | 800-810-5858<br>400-810-5858<br>010-6475 1880                                                                           | www.samsung.com/cn    |
| <b>COLOMBIA</b>       | 01-8000112112                                                                                                           | www.samsung.com.co    |
| <b>COSTA RICA</b>     | 0-800-507-7267                                                                                                          | www.samsung.com/latin |
| <b>CZECH REPUBLIC</b> | 800-726-786 (800 - SAMSUNG)<br>Samsung Zrt., česká organizační složka, Oasis Florenc, Sokolovská394/17, 180 00, Praha 8 | www.samsung.com/cz    |
| <b>DENMARK</b>        | 8-SAMSUNG (7267864)                                                                                                     | www.samsung.com/dk    |
| <b>ECUADOR</b>        | 1-800-10-7267                                                                                                           | www.samsung.com/latin |
| <b>EL SALVADOR</b>    | 800-6225                                                                                                                | www.samsung.com/latin |
| <b>ESTONIA</b>        | 800-7267                                                                                                                | www.samsung.ee        |
| <b>KAZAKHSTAN</b>     | 8-10-800-500-55-500                                                                                                     | www.samsung.com/kz_ru |
| <b>KYRGYZSTAN</b>     | 00-800-500-55-500                                                                                                       |                       |
| <b>FINLAND</b>        | 030-6227 515                                                                                                            | www.samsung.com/fi    |
| <b>FRANCE</b>         | 3260 SAMSUNG<br>08 25 08 65 65 (€ 0,15/min)                                                                             | www.samsung.com/fr    |
| <b>GERMANY</b>        | 01805 - SAMSUNG (726-7864 € 0,14/min)                                                                                   | www.samsung.de        |
| <b>GUATEMALA</b>      | 1-800-299-0013                                                                                                          | www.samsung.com/latin |
| <b>HONDURAS</b>       | 800-7919267                                                                                                             | www.samsung.com/latin |
| <b>HONG KONG</b>      | 3698 4698                                                                                                               | www.samsung.com/hk    |
| <b>HUNGARY</b>        | 06-80-SAMSUNG (726-7864)                                                                                                | www.samsung.com/hu    |

| COUNTRY/REGION       | CUSTOMER CARE CENTER                        | WEB SITE              |
|----------------------|---------------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| <b>INDIA</b>         | 3030 8282<br>1800 110011<br>1-800-3000-8282 | www.samsung.com/in    |
| <b>INDONESIA</b>     | 0800-112-8888                               | www.samsung.com/id    |
| <b>ITALIA</b>        | 800-SAMSUNG(726-7864)                       | www.samsung.com/it    |
| <b>JAMAICA</b>       | 1-800-234-7267                              | www.samsung.com/latin |
| <b>JAPAN</b>         | 0120-327-527                                | www.samsung.com/jp    |
| <b>LATVIA</b>        | 8000-7267                                   | www.samsung.com/lv    |
| <b>LITHUANIA</b>     | 8-800-77777                                 | www.samsung.com/lt    |
| <b>LUXEMBURG</b>     | 02 261 03 710                               | www.samsung.com/lu    |
| <b>MALAYSIA</b>      | 1800-88-9999                                | www.samsung.com/my    |
| <b>MEXICO</b>        | 01-800-SAMSUNG (726-7864)                   | www.samsung.com/mx    |
| <b>NETHERLANDS</b>   | 0900 SAMSUNG(726-7864 € 0,10/min)           | www.samsung.com/nl    |
| <b>NEW ZEALAND</b>   | 0800 SAMSUNG (0800 726 786)                 | www.samsung.com/nz    |
| <b>NICARAGUA</b>     | 00-1800-5077267                             | www.samsung.com/latin |
| <b>NORWAY</b>        | 3-SAMSUNG (7267864)                         | www.samsung.com/no    |
| <b>PANAMA</b>        | 800-7267                                    | www.samsung.com/latin |
| <b>PHILIPPINES</b>   | 1800-10-SAMSUNG (726-7864)                  | www.samsung.com/ph    |
| <b>POLAND</b>        | 0-801-1SAMSUNG (172678)<br>022-607-93-33    | www.samsung.com/pl    |
| <b>PORTUGAL</b>      | 80820-SAMSUNG (726-7864)                    | www.samsung.com/pt    |
| <b>PUERTO RICO</b>   | 1-800-682-3180                              | www.samsung.com/latin |
| <b>REP. DOMINICA</b> | 1-800-751-2676                              | www.samsung.com/latin |
| <b>EIRE</b>          | 0818 717 100                                | www.samsung.com/ie    |
| <b>RUSSIA</b>        | 8-800-555-55-55                             | www.samsung.ru        |
| <b>SINGAPORE</b>     | 1800-SAMSUNG (726-7864)                     | www.samsung.com/sg    |
| <b>SLOVAKIA</b>      | 0800-SAMSUNG (726-7864)                     | www.samsung.com/sk    |
| <b>SOUTH AFRICA</b>  | 0860 SAMSUNG (724-7864)                     | www.samsung.com/za    |
| <b>SPAIN</b>         | 902-1-SAMSU(72678)                          | www.samsung.com/es    |

| COUNTRY/REGION    | CUSTOMER CARE CENTER                 | WEB SITE              |
|-------------------|--------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| SWEDEN            | 075-SAMSUNG (7267864)                | www.samsung.com/se    |
| SWITZERLAND       | 0848-SAMSUNG (7267864, CHF 0.08/min) | www.samsung.com/ch    |
| TADJIKISTAN       | 8-10-800-500-55-500                  |                       |
| TAIWAN            | 0800-329-999                         | www.samsung.com/tw    |
| THAILAND          | 1800-29-3232<br>02-689-3232          | www.samsung.com/th    |
| TRINIDAD & TOBAGO | 1-800-SAMSUNG (726-7864)             | www.samsung.com/latin |
| TURKEY            | 444 77 11                            | www.samsung.com/tr    |
| U.A.E             | 800-SAMSUNG (726-7864)<br>8000-4726  | www.samsung.com/ae    |
| U.K               | 0845 SAMSUNG (726-7864)              | www.samsung.com/uk    |
| U.S.A             | 1-800-SAMSUNG (726-7864)             | www.samsung.com/us    |
| UKRAINE           | 8-800-502-0000                       | www.samsung.ua        |
| UZBEKISTAN        | 8-10-800-500-55-500                  | www.samsung.com/kz_ru |
| VENEZUELA         | 0-800-100-5303                       | www.samsung.com/latin |
| VIETNAM           | 1 800 588 889                        | www.samsung.com/vn    |

# glossary

---



The following glossary helps you get familiar with the product by understanding the terminologies commonly used with printing as well as mentioned in this user's guide.

## 802.11

802.11 is a set of standards for wireless local area network (WLAN) communication, developed by the IEEE LAN/MAN Standards Committee (IEEE 802).

## 802.11b/g

802.11b/g can share same hardware and use the 2.4 GHz band. 802.11b supports bandwidth up to 11 Mbps; 802.11g up to 54 Mbps. 802.11b/g devices may occasionally suffer interference from microwave ovens, cordless telephones, and Bluetooth devices.

## Access point

Access Point or Wireless Access Point (AP or WAP) is a device that connects wireless communication devices together on wireless local area networks (WLAN), and acts as a central transmitter and receiver of WLAN radio signals.

## ADF

An Automatic Document Feeder (ADF) is a mechanism that will automatically feed an original sheet of paper so that the machine can scan some amount of the paper at once.

## AppleTalk

AppleTalk is a proprietary suite of protocols developed by Apple, Inc for computer networking. It was included in the original Macintosh (1984) and is now deprecated by Apple in favor of TCP/IP networking.

## BIT Depth

A computer graphics term describing the number of bits used to represent the color of a single pixel in a bitmapped image. Higher color depth gives a broader range of distinct colors. As the number of bits increases, the number of possible colors becomes impractically large for a color map. 1-bit color is commonly called as monochrome or black and white.

## BMP

A bitmapped graphics format used internally by the Microsoft Windows graphics subsystem (GDI), and used commonly as a simple graphics file format on that platform.

## BOOTP

Bootstrap Protocol. A network protocol used by a network client to obtain its IP address automatically. This is usually done in the bootstrap process of computers or operating systems running on them. The BOOTP servers assign the IP address from a pool of addresses to each client. BOOTP enables 'diskless workstation' computers to obtain an IP address prior to loading any advanced operating system.

## CCD

Charge Coupled Device (CCD) is a hardware which enables the scan job. CCD Locking mechanism is also used to hold the CCD module to prevent any damage when you move the machine.

## Collation

Collation is a process of printing a multiple-copy job in sets. When collation is selected, the device prints an entire set before printing additional copies.

## Control Panel

A control panel is a flat, typically vertical, area where control or monitoring instruments are displayed. They are typically found in front of the machine.

## Coverage

It is the printing term used for a toner usage measurement on printing. For example, 5% coverage means that an A4 sided paper has about 5% image or text on it. So, if the paper or original has complicated images or lots of text on it, the coverage will be higher and at the same time, a toner usage will be as much as the coverage.

## CSV

Comma Separated Values (CSV). A type of file format, CSV is used to exchange data between disparate applications. The file format, as it is used in Microsoft Excel, has become a pseudo standard throughout the industry, even among non-Microsoft platforms.

## DADF

A Duplex Automatic Document Feeder (DADF) is a mechanism that will automatically feed and flip over an original sheet of paper so that the machine can scan on both sides of the paper.

## Default

The value or setting that is in effect when taking a printer out of its box state, reset, or initialized.

## DHCP

A Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) is a client-server networking protocol. A DHCP server provides configuration parameters specific to the DHCP client host requesting, generally, information required by the client host to participate on an IP network. DHCP also provides a mechanism for allocation of IP addresses to client hosts.

## DIMM

Dual Inline Memory Module (DIMM), a small circuit board that holds memory. DIMM stores all the data within the machine like printing data, received fax data.

## DNS

The Domain Name Server (DNS) is a system that stores information associated with domain names in a distributed database on networks, such as the Internet.

## Dot Matrix Printer

A dot matrix printer refers to a type of computer printer with a print head that runs back and forth on the page and prints by impact, striking an ink-soaked cloth ribbon against the paper, much like a typewriter.

## DPI

Dots Per Inch (DPI) is a measurement of resolution that is used for scanning and printing. Generally, higher DPI results in a higher resolution, more visible detail in the image, and a larger file size.

## DRPD

Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection. Distinctive Ring is a telephone company service which enables a user to use a single telephone line to answer several different telephone numbers.

## Duplex

A mechanism that will automatically flip over a sheet of paper so that the machine can print (or scan) on both sides of the paper. A printer equipped with a Duplex can print double-sided of paper.

## Duty Cycle

Duty cycle is the page quantity which does not affect printer performance for a month. Generally the printer has the lifespan limitation such as pages per year. The lifespan means the average capacity of print-outs, usually within the warranty period. For example, if the duty cycle is 48,000 pages per month assuming 20 working days, a printer limits 2,400 pages a day.

## ECM

Error Correction Mode (ECM) is an optional transmission mode built into Class 1 fax machines or fax modems. It automatically detects and corrects errors in the fax transmission process that are sometimes caused by telephone line noise.

## Emulation

Emulation is a technique of one machine obtaining the same results as another.

An emulator duplicates the functions of one system with a different system, so that the second system behaves like the first system. Emulation focuses on exact reproduction of external behavior, which is in contrast to simulation, which concerns an abstract model of the system being simulated, often considering its internal state.

## Ethernet

Ethernet is a frame-based computer networking technology for local area networks (LANs). It defines wiring and signaling for the physical layer, and frame formats and protocols for the media access control (MAC)/data link layer of the OSI model. Ethernet is mostly standardized as IEEE 802.3. It has become the most widespread LAN technology in use during the 1990s to the present.

## EtherTalk

A suite of protocols developed by Apple Computer for computer networking. It was included in the original Macintosh (1984) and is now deprecated by Apple in favor of TCP/IP networking.

## FDI

Foreign Device Interface (FDI) is a card installed inside the machine to allow a third party device such as a coin operated device or a card reader. Those devices allow the pay-for-print service on your machine.

## FTP

A File Transfer Protocol (FTP) is a commonly used protocol for exchanging files over any network that supports the TCP/IP protocol (such as the Internet or an intranet).

## Fuser Unit

The part of a laser printer that melts the toner onto the print media. It consists of a hot roller and a back-up roller. After toner is transferred onto the paper, the fuser unit applies heat and pressure to ensure that the toner stays on the paper permanently, which is why paper is warm when it comes out of a laser printer.

## Gateway

A connection between computer networks, or between a computer network and a telephone line. It is very popular, as it is a computer or a network that allows access to another computer or network.

## Grayscale

A shades of gray that represent light and dark portions of an image when color images are converted to grayscale; colors are represented by various shades of gray.

## Halftone

An image type that simulates grayscale by varying the number of dots. Highly colored areas consist of a large number of dots, while lighter areas consist of a smaller number of dots.

## HDD

Hard Disk Drive (HDD), commonly referred to as a hard drive or hard disk, is a non-volatile storage device which stores digitally-encoded data on rapidly rotating platters with magnetic surfaces.

## IEEE

The Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE) is an international non-profit, professional organization for the advancement of technology related to electricity.

## IEEE 1284

The 1284 parallel port standard was developed by the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE). The term "1284-B" refers to a specific connector type on the end of the parallel cable that attaches to the peripheral (for example, a printer).

## **Intranet**

A private network that uses Internet Protocols, network connectivity, and possibly the public telecommunication system to securely share part of an organization's information or operations with its employees. Sometimes the term refers only to the most visible service, the internal website.

## **IP address**

An Internet Protocol (IP) address is a unique number that devices use in order to identify and communicate with each other on a network utilizing the Internet Protocol standard.

## **IPM**

The Images Per Minute (IPM) is a way of measuring the speed of a printer. An IPM rate indicates the number of single-sided sheets a printer can complete within one minute.

## **IPP**

The Internet Printing Protocol (IPP) defines a standard protocol for printing as well as managing print jobs, media size, resolution, and so forth. IPP can be used locally or over the Internet to hundreds of printers, and also supports access control, authentication, and encryption, making it a much more capable and secure printing solution than older ones.

## **IPX/SPX**

IPX/SPX stands for Internet Packet Exchange/Sequenced Packet Exchange. It is a networking protocol used by the Novell NetWare operating systems. IPX and SPX both provide connection services similar to TCP/IP, with the IPX protocol having similarities to IP, and SPX having similarities to TCP. IPX/SPX was primarily designed for local area networks (LANs), and is a very efficient protocol for this purpose (typically its performance exceeds that of TCP/IP on a LAN).

## **ISO**

The International Organization for Standardization (ISO) is an international standard-setting body composed of representatives from national standards bodies. It produces world-wide industrial and commercial standards.

## **ITU-T**

The International Telecommunication Union is an international organization established to standardize and regulate international radio and telecommunications. Its main tasks include standardization, allocation of the radio spectrum, and organizing interconnection arrangements between different countries to allow international phone calls. A -T out of ITU-T indicates telecommunication.

## **ITU-T No. 1 chart**

Standardized test chart published by ITU-T for document facsimile transmissions.

## **JBIG**

Joint Bi-level Image Experts Group (JBIG) is an image compression standard with no loss of accuracy or quality, which was designed for

compression of binary images, particularly for faxes, but can also be used on other images.

## **JPEG**

Joint Photographic Experts Group (JPEG) is a most commonly used standard method of lossy compression for photographic images. It is the format used for storing and transmitting photographs on the World Wide Web.

## **LDAP**

The Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) is a networking protocol for querying and modifying directory services running over TCP/IP.

## **LED**

A Light-Emitting Diode (LED) is a semiconductor device that indicates the status of a machine.

## **MAC address**

Media Access Control (MAC) address is a unique identifier associated with a network adapter. MAC address is a unique 48-bit identifier usually written as 12 hexadecimal characters grouped in pairs (e. g., 00-00-0c-34-11-4e). This address is usually hard-coded into a Network Interface Card (NIC) by its manufacturer, and used as an aid for routers trying to locate machines on large networks.

## **MFP**

Multi Function Peripheral (MFP) is an office machine that includes the following functionality in one physical body, so as to have a printer, a copier, a fax, a scanner and etc.

## **MH**

Modified Huffman (MH) is a compression method for decreasing the amount of data that needs to be transmitted between the fax machines to transfer the image recommended by ITU-T T.4. MH is a codebook-based run-length encoding scheme optimized to efficiently compress white space. As most faxes consist mostly of white space, this minimizes the transmission time of most faxes.

## **MMR**

Modified Modified READ (MMR) is a compression method recommended by ITU-T T.6.

## **Modem**

A device that modulates a carrier signal to encode digital information, and also demodulates such a carrier signal to decode transmitted information.

## **MR**

Modified Read (MR) is a compression method recommended by ITU-T T.4. MR encodes the first scanned line using MH. The next line is compared to the first, the differences determined, and then the differences are encoded and transmitted.

## **NetWare**

A network operating system developed by Novell, Inc. It initially used cooperative multitasking to run various services on a PC, and the network protocols were based on the archetypal Xerox XNS stack. Today NetWare supports TCP/IP as well as IPX/SPX.

## **OPC**

Organic Photo Conductor (OPC) is a mechanism that makes a virtual image for print using a laser beam emitted from a laser printer, and it is usually green or gray colored and a cylinder shaped.

An exposing unit of a drum is slowly worn away by its usage of the printer, and it should be replaced appropriately since it gets scratches from grits of a paper.

## **Originals**

The first example of something, such as a document, photograph or text, etc, which is copied, reproduced or translated to produce others, but which is not itself copied or derived from something else.

## **OSI**

Open Systems Interconnection (OSI) is a model developed by the International Organization for Standardization (ISO) for communications. OSI offers a standard, modular approach to network design that divides the required set of complex functions into manageable, self-contained, functional layers. The layers are, from top to bottom, Application, Presentation, Session, Transport, Network, Data Link and Physical.

## **PABX**

A private automatic branch exchange (PABX) is an automatic telephone switching system within a private enterprise.

## **PCL**

Printer Command Language (PCL) is a Page Description Language (PDL) developed by HP as a printer protocol and has become an industry standard. Originally developed for early inkjet printers, PCL has been released in varying levels for thermal, matrix printer, and page printers.

## **PDF**

Portable Document Format (PDF) is a proprietary file format developed by Adobe Systems for representing two dimensional documents in a device independent and resolution independent format.

## **PostScript**

PostScript (PS) is a page description language and programming language used primarily in the electronic and desktop publishing areas. - that is run in an interpreter to generate an image.

## **Printer Driver**

A program used to send commands and transfer data from the computer to the printer.

## **Print Media**

The media like paper, envelopes, labels, and transparencies which can be used on a printer, a scanner, a fax or, a copier.

## **PPM**

Pages Per Minute (PPM) is a method of measurement for determining how fast a printer works, meaning the number of pages a printer can produce in one minute.

## **PRN file**

An interface for a device driver, this allows software to interact with the device driver using standard input/output system calls, which simplifies many tasks.

## **Protocol**

A convention or standard that controls or enables the connection, communication, and data transfer between two computing endpoints.

## **PS**

See PostScript.

## **PSTN**

The Public-Switched Telephone Network (PSTN) is the network of the world's public circuit-switched telephone networks which, on industrial premises, is usually routed through the switchboard.

## **RADIUS**

Remote Authentication Dial In User Service (RADIUS) is a protocol for remote user authentication and accounting. RADIUS enables centralized management of authentication data such as usernames and passwords using an AAA (authentication, authorization, and accounting) concept to manage network access.

## **Resolution**

The sharpness of an image, measured in Dots Per Inch (DPI). The higher the dpi, the greater the resolution.

## **SMB**

Server Message Block (SMB) is a network protocol mainly applied to share files, printers, serial ports, and miscellaneous communications between nodes on a network. It also provides an authenticated Inter-process communication mechanism.

## **SMTP**

Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) is the standard for e-mail transmissions across the Internet. SMTP is a relatively simple, text-based protocol, where one or more recipients of a message are specified, and then the message text is transferred. It is a client-server protocol, where the client transmits an email message to the server.

## **SSID**

Service Set Identifier (SSID) is a name of a wireless local area network (WLAN). All wireless devices in a WLAN use the same SSID in order to communicate with each other. The SSIDs are case-sensitive and have a maximum length of 32 characters.



## Subnet Mask

The subnet mask is used in conjunction with the network address to determine which part of the address is the network address and which part is the host address.

## TCP/IP

The Transmission Control Protocol (TCP) and the Internet Protocol (IP); the set of communications protocols that implement the protocol stack on which the Internet and most commercial networks run.

## TCR

Transmission Confirmation Report (TCR) provides details of each transmission such as job status, transmission result and number of pages sent. This report can be set to print after each job or only after failed transmissions.

## TIFF

Tagged Image File Format (TIFF) is a variable-resolution bitmapped image format. TIFF describes image data that typically come from scanners. TIFF images make use of tags, keywords defining the characteristics of the image that is included in the file. This flexible and platform-independent format can be used for pictures that have been made by various image processing applications.

## Toner Cartridge

A kind of bottle within a machine like printer which contains toner. Toner is a powder used in laser printers and photocopiers, which forms the text and images on the printed paper. Toner can be melted by the heat of the fuser, causing it to bind to the fibers in the paper.

## TWAIN

An industry standard for scanners and software. By using a TWAIN-compliant scanner with a TWAIN-compliant program, a scan can be initiated from within the program.; an image capture API for Microsoft Windows and Apple Macintosh operating systems.

## UNC Path

Uniform Naming Convention (UNC) is a standard way to access network shares in Window NT and other Microsoft products. The format of a UNC path is: \\<servername>\<sharename>\<Additional directory>

## URL

Uniform Resource Locator (URL) is the global address of documents and resources on the Internet. The first part of the address indicates what protocol to use, the second part specifies the IP address or the domain name where the resource is located.

## USB

Universal Serial Bus (USB) is a standard that was developed by the USB Implementers Forum, Inc., to connect computers and peripherals. Unlike the parallel port, USB is designed to concurrently connect a single computer USB port to multiple peripherals.

## Watermark

A watermark is a recognizable image or pattern in paper that appears lighter when viewed by transmitted light. Watermarks were first introduced in Bologna, Italy in 1282; they have been used by papermakers to identify their product, and also on postage stamps, currency, and other government documents to discourage counterfeiting.

## WEP

Wired Equivalent Privacy (WEP) is a security protocol specified in IEEE 802.11 to provide the same level of security as that of a wired LAN. WEP provides security by encrypting data over radio so that it is protected as it is transmitted from one end point to another.

## WIA

Windows Imaging Architecture (WIA) is an imaging architecture that is originally introduced in Windows Me and Windows XP. A scan can be initiated from within these operating systems by using a WIA-compliant scanner.

## WPA

Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA) is a class of systems to secure wireless (Wi-Fi) computer networks, which was created to improve upon the security features of WEP.

## WPA-PSK

WPA-PSK (WPA Pre-Shared Key) is special mode of WPA for small business or home users. A shared key, or password, is configured in the wireless access point (WAP) and any wireless laptop or desktop devices. WPA-PSK generates a unique key for each session between a wireless client and the associated WAP for more advanced security.

## A

- accessories
  - installing 125
  - ordering 124
- adjusting
  - tray size 51
- answering machine/fax 83
- authentication
  - printing a report 94
- auto continue setting 52
- auto tray switch setting 52

## B

- backing up data 90
- booklet printing 62
- booklets 62
- buttons
  - Power Saver 31

## C

- cleaning
  - inside 105
  - outside 105
  - scan unit 106
- cleaning a machine 105
- control panel 30
- convention 24
- copy setup 93
- copy timeout setting 72
- copying
  - adjusting darkness 70
  - basic copying 70
  - changing the copy setup 93, 94, 72
  - ID card copy 71
  - n-up copy 71
  - poster copy 71
  - reducing or enlarging copies 70
  - selecting the size of originals 70

## D

- date setting 49
- default settings
  - changing the default settings 50
  - loading paper 50
  - setting a fax header 81
  - tray setting 59
- display screen 30
- document feeder 54
- duplex printing
  - copy 72
  - print 62, 69

## E

- email address
  - group 74
  - individual 74
  - printing 74
  - searching 74
- Entering
  - using the number keypad 50
- error message 112
- extension telephone 84

## F

- favorites settings, for printing 61
- fax receiving
  - activating secure receive 84
  - changing the receive mode 83
  - DRPD mode 84
  - extension telephone 84
  - in answering machine/fax 83, 85
  - receiving in duplex 84
  - secure receiving 84
- fax sending
  - delay sending 82
  - multi sending 82
  - redialing the last number 82
  - sending a fax 81, 83
- fax setup 92, 94
- faxing
  - address book 86, 85
  - changing receiving mode 83, 92
  - delaying a fax transmission 82

- forwarding faxes 85
- group dial 87
- preparing to fax 81
- receiving 83, 85, 83, 84, 82
- sending 81, 83, 84, 81, 86

## features 26

- machine features 92, 129
- PostScript driver 60
- power saving feature 51, 133, 60
- supplied software 32

## font setting 52

## front view 28

## FTP, scan 75

## G

- glossary 136
- group
  - email address for scanning 74

## I

- ID copy 71
- individual
  - email addresses for scanning 74
- information 9

## J

- jam
  - clearing paper 109
  - tips for avoiding paper jams 108
- job timeout setting 52

## L

- language 49
- LCD display
  - changing the display language 49
- LED
  - machine status 31
  - power saver 31
  - understanding the status LED 31

## Linux

- common Linux problems 122

- driver installation for network connected 42, 35
- printer properties 67
- scanning 79, 33, 34
- unified driver configurator 102

## loading

- in the document feeder 54
- originals on the scanner glass 53
- paper in multi-purpose tray 56, 55
- special media 57

## M

### Macintosh

- common Macintosh problems 123
- driver installation for network connected 41, 47, 35
- printing 65
- scanning 78, 37, 33
- using SetIP 39, 43

maintenance parts 124

managing USB memory 90

### memory

- clearing memory 94
- installing memory module 126
- memory upgrading 125

menu overview 96

### multi-purpose tray

- loading 56
- tips on using 56
- using special media 57

## N

### network

- driver installation
  - Linux 42
  - Macintosh 41, 47
  - Windows 40
- installing environment 38
- SetIP program 39, 43
- setting up 38
- wired network 38, 42

network setup 95

N-up copy 71

### N-up printing

- Macintosh 66
- Windows 62

## O

### on hook dial

- hardware 30

optional tray 124

- loading paper 55

ordering 124

### original document

- clearing jam 107
- loading
  - in the document feeder 54
  - on the scanner glass 53

### original type

- copying 70

### overlay printing

- create 64
- delete 64
- print 64

## P

### placing a machine

- adjusting the altitude 49
- spacing 32

poster, print 62

### PostScript driver

- features 60
- troubleshooting 121

### power saver

- button 31
- using power save mode 51

### print media

- card stock 58
- envelope 57
- guidelines 54
- labels 58
- output support 133
- preprinted paper 59
- setting the default tray and paper
  - in the computer 51
- 59, 57
- transparency 58

### print resolution set

- Linux 67

### print resolution, set

- Macintosh 66

### printer driver

- features 60

### printer preferences

- Linux 67

### printer properties 62

- opening printer preferences 68

### printing

- changing the default print settings 64, 63
- fitting your document to a selected paper size 63
- Linux 67
- Macintosh 65

multiple pages on one sheet of paper

- Macintosh 66
- Windows 62

### poster 62

- Windows 60
- Macintosh 66
- Windows 62, 69

65

using overlay 64, 63

### printing a document

- Linux 67
- Macintosh 65

### problems

- copying problems 120
- paper feeding problems 115, 117

## R

rear view 29

regulatory information 13

### replacing

- ADF rubber pad 127

### resolution

- faxing 85

## S

### safety

- information 9
- symbols 9

scan to email 73

scan to server 75

### scanner

- glass 53
- lid 28, 53

### scanner glass

- loading documents 53

### scanning

- authentication 76
- basic information 73
- changing default settings 77, 50
- for local connection 75
  - setting up 75
  - to email 73, 75
- Linux 79
- Macintosh 78
- TWAIN 78
- WIA 78

serial number 105

### service center registration

- usb cable-connected machine 35

service contact numbers 134

SetIP program 39, 43

#### Smart Panel

- font setting 52
- general information 100

#### specifications

- copier 131
- faximile 132
- general 129
- print media 133, 130
- scanner 131

start button 30

stop button 30

#### storing email addresses

- group 74
- individual 74

#### supplies

- available supplies 124
- expected toner cartridge life 106
- ordering 124
- replacing toner cartridge 125

#### SyncThru™ Web Service

- general information 99

## T

time setting 49

to USB memory device 89

#### toner cartridge

- expected life 106, 129
- redistributing toner 107, 125
- storage 106

toner save mode 51

#### tray

- adjusting the width and length 55
- changing the tray size 55
- loading paper in multi-purpose tray 56
- ordering an optional tray 124
- setting the paper size and type 59

TWAIN, scan 78

## U

#### USB cable

- driver installation 34
- how to scan 89, 90
- port 29

#### USB memory

- how to back up 90

#### USB memory device

- port 28, 29, 90

## W

#### watermark

- create 63
- delete 64
- edit 64
- print 63

#### WIA

- scan 78

#### Windows

- common Windows problems 122
- driver installation for network connected  
40, 34
- printing 60
- scanning 73, 36, 33
- using SetIP 39, 43